

[illegible]

N. C. Murmu
Tribology Group
CMERI, Mahatma Avenue
Durgapur - 713209
India
E-mail: ncmurmu@yahoo.com

This technical report is dedicated to the memory of
Guru Gomke *Pandit Raghunath Murmu*, the Inventor of Ol Chiki Script,
on his birth centenary year 2004-05

Copyright © 2005 by the Authors.

All rights reserved. No partial or full part of this publication may be reproduced on any other publication or product for commercial purposes except as permitted by the copyright law without the prior written permission from the authors.

The PDF file of this report is available for download at <http://www.wesanthals.org/>.

Contents

Preface.....	v
Abstract.....	1
1 Introduction	2
2 Ol Chiki Letters.....	3
3 Parts Of Speech.....	4
3.1 Emphasizers Corresponding to Nouns and Pronouns in the Subject	4
3.2 Free Emphasizers.....	8
3.3 Verbs and Verb Qualifiers	9
3.3.1 Source of Verb Structure in Santali.....	9
3.3.2 Auxiliary Verbs.....	12
3.3.3 Principal Verbs.....	13
3.3.4 Nouns and Adjectives used as Verbs.....	15
3.4 Pronouns	18
3.4.1 Personal Pronouns	18
3.5 Nouns.....	19
3.6 Adjectives	19
3.7 Other Parts of Speech	19
4 Basic Structure Of Simple Sentences.....	20
4.1 Structure of Basic Simple Sentences	21
4.2 Transitive and Intransitive Verbs.....	23
4.3 Strong and Weak Forms of Verb Structures	24
4.3.1 Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verbs	25
4.3.2 Naming of the Tenses.....	28
4.3.3 Uses of the Tenses and Translation of Simple Sentences with Intransitive Verbs to English.....	29
4.3.4 Observations on the Tenses and the Uses of the Tenses	34
4.3.5 Deviations in Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verbs.....	35
4.3.6 Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs having Direct Inanimate Object	36
4.3.7 Semantics of Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs with Direct Inanimate Object	39
4.3.8 Observations on the Semantics of Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs with Direct Inanimate Object and Translation of Simple Sentences Using them into English	41
4.3.9 Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs having Direct Animate Object	42
4.3.10 Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs having Indirect Animate Object.....	44
4.3.11 Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs having Indirect Inanimate Object.....	47
4.3.12 Forms of Verb Structures having Animate Subject Infix	48
4.3.13 Aka Forms of Verb structures	54
4.3.14 Weak Forms of Verb Structures having No Strong Counterpart.....	54
4.3.15 Classification and Use of Base Forms of Verbs	56
4.3.16 Use of Truncated Verb Structures as Adjectives.....	58
4.3.17 Classification of Verbal Suffixes and Suffixed Forms of Verbs	59
4.3.18 Classification of Verb Structures	63
4.3.19 Classification of Verbs	65
5 Simple Sentences with More Complex Auxiliary Verbs	66
5.1 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix འཇུག་པའི་ or its equivalence.....	66
5.2 Uses of the Tenses having Terminator Suffix འཇུག་པའི་ or its equivalence	67
5.3 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix འཇུག་པའི་	68
5.4 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix འཇུག་པའི་	69

5.5 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix ୱୱ	69
5.6 Verb Structures having Free Emphasizer ୱୱୱୱ	70
5.7 Verb Structures having Free Emphasizer ୱୱୱୱ	70
5.8 Verb Structures having Free Emphasizer ୱୱୱୱ.ୱ	71
5.9 Verb Structures having Emphasizing Infix ୱୱ	72
5.10 Verb Structures having Possessive Infix.....	72
6 Main Verbs and Verb Qualifiers	75
6.1 Compound Main Verbs.....	75
6.2 Verb Qualifiers	78
6.2.1 Verb Structures having Verb Qualifier ୱୱୱ/ୱୱୱୱ	78
7 Synthesis of Other Kinds of Sentences	83
8 Postpositions, Adverbs and Conjunctions	83
8.1 Postpositions	83
8.2 Adverbs.....	84
8.3 Conjunctions	84
9 Conclusions.....	84
References	85
Appendix A: Tables of Suffixed Forms of Verbs	86
Appendix B: List of Important Terms along with Their Equivalence in Santali.....	91
Appendix C: Tables of Forms of Verb Structures	95

Preface to the Initial Edition

After it became known to many people that the writing of this report is in progress, there has been an increasing demand to publish the report early. However, due to lack of time, we have not been able to write a substantial part of it. But the part dealing with the analysis of verb structures in Santali, and the synthesis of affirmative simple sentences is more or less complete. In order to meet the various requirements of people dealing with Santali language, and to get an early feedback on the part of the report that is already complete, we have decided to make it available. Feedback on the already completed part will help us to rewrite the full version, which is expected to be ready soon, in a more comprehensive form. Besides, we sincerely hope that this initial version will be useful to all the people who are involved in the development of Santali language, and who are very much interested to know more about Santali language.

R. C. Hansdah & N. C. Murmu
Bangalore, India
8th March, 2005

A Framework for Learning and Understanding Santali in Ol Chiki Script

R. C. Hansdah
Dept. of Computer Science & Automation
Indian Institute of Science
Bangalore - 560012
India
E-mail: hansdah@csa.iisc.ernet.in

N. C. Murmu
Tribology Group
CMERI, Mahatma Avenue
Durgapur - 713209
India
E-mail: ncmurmu@yahoo.com

Wesanthals e-group Technical Report No. 1
Version No. 1.00
<http://www.wesanthals.org/>
wesanthals@yahoo.com
March 8, 2005

Abstract – This report aims to achieve the following objectives. Firstly, a non-Santali speaker should be able to get a good overview of Santali language after going through it. Secondly, the presentation in this report should provide a good reference material for analyzing Santali language. Thirdly, it should provide a versatile framework for translating Santali into English, and vice versa. This would greatly help in writing good technical articles in Santali, and thereby, help to enrich Santal society with knowledge. Towards achieving these goals, we have identified those features of Santali language which are very much central to understanding its syntax and semantics. The first of these features is that Santali has built-in mechanisms to emphasize parts of a sentence. The second such feature is that it has two broad classes of verb structures which do not really correspond to active and passive voice of English, and therefore, they need to be understood independent of these concepts. The third point is that it is essential to identify the principal and auxiliary verb component of each and every verb structure so that their semantics can be properly understood. To identify the principal and auxiliary verb component of verb structures, we have provided a general verb structure source, which is more general than that exists currently, and from which almost all verb structures that are spoken can be derived. Using this verb structure source, we have identified the source of most verb structures, defined their syntax, interpreted them with the most probable semantics, and divided each of them into principal and auxiliary verb component. This analysis has also enabled us to identify verb structures which, in our opinion, should be translated as passive voice while translating them into English. While translating an English verb structure into Santali, the same concepts may be applied to identify the corresponding Santali verb structure. Finally, we have also presented a brief overview of how to construct more complex sentences in Santali.

1 Introduction

There have been many works[1, 2, 4, 5] in the last century to understand and document Santali language, and yet it is very difficult for a non-Santali speaker to learn it easily, and even for a Santali speaker to analyze it properly. In addition, these works have not been carried out with a view to teach Santali. Santali is a distinct and an interesting language with its own features, and belongs to the Munda group in the Austro-Asiatic family of languages. One of the features is that it has built-in mechanisms to emphasize parts of a sentence. This feature of Santali is well recognized in literature[1, 3, 4], but it has not been dealt with enough details. As a result, it has not been possible to exploit this feature of Santali language for the purpose of understanding and teaching it. In Santali, a word can be emphasized in some sense using another word that follows the first word. Hence, it is appropriate to recognize words of the latter category as a separate parts of speech in Santali, and we would term such words as **emphasizers**. In the process, a word of the latter category may get merged with the word that precedes it. Sufficient examples would be given later to illustrate this feature of Santali.

English and many Indic Languages have the concept of active and passive voice in verbs. In the active voice, it is the subject which is important, and in the passive voice, it is the object that is important. In a sense, this is a mechanism to emphasize what is important in a sentence. This also gives rise to two classes of verb structures which can be easily recognized. In the rest of this report, by a *verb structure*, we shall mean the sequence of words which are spoken to denote the action represented by it. Santali also has two distinct classes of verb structures which are easily recognizable, and this fact has also been noted in other works[4, 5]. But since Santali already has other mechanisms to emphasize parts of a sentence, it is reasonable to think about what these two distinct classes of verb structures may correspond to. In the previous works[1, 2, 5], attempts have made to understand them using existing concept of grammar such as voice, but anomalies still persist. For example, there are many intransitive verbs which may take one form, and there are also a large number of other intransitive verbs which may take the other form. Still worse, there are some intransitive verbs which may assume both forms. In this report, we have interpreted these two classes of verb structures in Santali in a different way, and show that this interpretation leads to the understanding of Santali in a natural way. *The basis of this interpretation is that the form of a verb structure in Santali depends on how much the subject is involved in performing the action represented by the verb.* In the first type of verb structure, the subject is not much involved energetically in performing the action represented by the verb, and so, we term the form of such a verb structure as **weak form**. There are varieties of **weak forms of verb structures** which are described later. We shall refer to a *verb structure in weak form* as **weak verb structure**, and we say that the verb structure is of **weak type**. Verbs which can be used in weak forms of verb structures only are called **weak verbs**. In the second type of verb structure, the subject is very much involved energetically in performing the action represented by the verb, and hence, we term the form of such a verb structure as **strong form**. There are several kinds of **strong forms of verb structures** described later in the report. We shall refer to a *verb structure in strong form* as **strong verb structure**, and we say that the verb structure is of **strong type**. Verbs which can be used in strong forms of verb structures are called **strong verbs**. It is to be noted that a strong verb may be used in weak forms of verb structures in other sentences. This interpretation permits even an intransitive verb to be used in both weak and strong forms of verb structures depending on how much the subject is involved in performing the action represented by the verb. *It is to be noted that the concept of weak and strong forms of Santali verb structures is not a substitute for the concept of voice, but it is another dimension to understand the verb structures of Santali language. In fact, we may now be able to characterize with more clarity as to which verb structures are active, and which are passive.*

Grammars of most languages have the concept of *principal verb* and *auxiliary verb* in a verb structure. In the previous works on Santali language, not much attempts have been made to separate the principal and auxiliary component of a verb structure in Santali. This may be one reason why it has been difficult for a non-Santali speaker to grasp Santali easily. In this report, we have done this separation for all verb structures in Santali, and it considerably helps in understanding the syntax and semantics of sentences in Santali. A verb structure in Santali is fairly complex. It is not enough to decompose a verb structure into principal and auxiliary part for understanding it. The principal component of a verb structure contains a main verb in some form, and it may also contain a few other words that qualify the main verb in a certain way. This feature is present in most languages, but in Santali language, it occurs extensively, and the kind of qualification also varies widely. As a result, it is fair to consider the words of the latter category as belonging to a separate parts of speech in Santali, and we term them as **verb qualifiers** rather than just as a kind of adverb. An auxiliary verb in Santali may also be composed of many words. Initially, we have considered only those auxiliary verbs that have minimal number of words. In this way, we obtain the *main auxiliary verbs* of Santali. Subsequently, we consider other auxiliary verbs each of which can be obtained from a main auxiliary verb after adding a word to the main auxiliary verb or substituting a word for a part of the main auxiliary verb. This approach considerably reduces the complexity of understanding Santali language.

In the above, we have outlined the approach that we are going to adopt in order to analyze the basic structures of sentences in Santali, and give their corresponding meanings in English. The emphasis is on understanding the structures of verb formations of Santali as it is central to the understanding of Santali language itself. As far as possible, we have attempted to give a correct English translation of each sentence in Santali given as examples. However, since exact translation is not always feasible, there is a possibility of errors creeping in the translation due to various reasons such as oversight, inadequate understanding of the semantics etc., and, suggestions to rectify these errors(if any) are very much welcome. The rest of the report is organized as follows. In section 2, we give a brief description of Ol Chiki letters. Section 3 discusses the various parts of speech in Santali using examples. Section 4 analyzes the basic structure of simple sentences using only the main auxiliary verbs and principal verbs without verb qualifiers, and gives their corresponding meanings in English. In section 5, we analyze structures of additional simple sentences that have more complex auxiliary verbs. Section 6 describes various kinds of main verbs and verb qualifiers and their use in constructing simple sentences. In section 7, we give examples of how to construct other kinds of sentences such as negative sentences, interrogative sentences etc. along with their meanings. In section 8, we briefly describe various kinds of postpositions, adverbs and conjunctions in Santali together with examples showing their use in composing sentences. Section 9 concludes the report with directions for future work.

2 Ol Chiki Letters

In the following, a brief description of Ol Chiki letters is given.

put it another way, it is wrong to write such a word in a way that would attempt to get its pronunciation from those of its constituent words. The reason for this is that such practice would result in a word whose pronunciation is different from that of the original word which is actually spoken. Hence, we shall not try to understand how the pronunciation of a word has been derived from those of its constituent words even if its pronunciation is similar to a combination of theirs.

Since the subject is already implicit in the verb in the above sentence, it can be rewritten without any loss of information in an abbreviated form as follows.

ଏଠିଏଠି ଥି.୨ [ଥ+ଆ] ।
I shall go.

Table 3.3

This is the most commonly used form in case of first and second person subjects, and in fact, the absence of the subject in true form does increase the emphasis on the verb. *But the subject in its original form is always implicitly present. Any analysis that does not assume the presence of the subject in true form is incorrect. Also, the presence of a bound emphazier in a sentence does, in fact, characterize that it is a complete simple sentence with animate subject.* This is all the more true because there could be varieties of subjects, say, of type third person and singular number, and it is not possible to omit them as all will have the same bound emphazier. That is, we cannot make out the subject of third person type from its bound emphazier. The example in the table 3.4 given below clearly illustrates this point.

ଏଠିଏଠି ଥି.୨ [ଥ+ଥ] ।
He or Ram or Shyam or Somebody else will go.

Table 3.4

In the above sentence, ଏଠି is the main verb and used as principal verb in the form of ଏଠିଏଠି, and ଥି is the auxiliary verb suffixed with the bound emphazier ୨ corresponding to a subject of third person singular number type. It can be seen from the example that it is not possible to figure out the subject in this case from the bound emphazier.

In any case, only the verb or the parts of speech preceding the verb can be emphasized. Consider the example in the table 3.5 given below.

ଆ ଉଠିଉଠିଆ [ଉଠିଉଠିଆ+ଆ] ଏଠିଏଠି ଥି ।
I shall go to the market.

Table 3.5

In the above sentence, ଉଠିଉଠିଆ means ‘market’, and it is emphasized. Also, we cannot remove ଆ from ଉଠିଉଠିଆ and replace ଆ by ଆଂଆ. However, we can definitely emphasize the verb ଏଠି instead of noun ଉଠିଉଠିଆ.

If the sentence is negative, then, in most sentences, only the word making the sentence negative can be emphasized. Such words always occur just before the verb. This is illustrated in the example given below.

ଆ ଉଠିଉଠିଆ ନା.୨ [ନା+ଆ] ଏଠିଏଠି ଥି ।
I shall not go to the market.

	about other people. They might as well join in. If ‘only’ is placed before ‘I’ in the corresponding English sentence, it would preclude others from going to the market.
2.	ମନୁ ଶୁଣି ଉଠିବିନିମାନୁ [ଉଠିବିନିମାନୁ+ମନୁ] ଧୂଢ଼ିବିବି ଶୁ । Only I shall go to the <i>market</i> . What it means is that, of all the people present here, it is proposed that only I will go to the market. In this sense, ଶୁ is similar to ‘only’, but it lacks the force of ‘only’.
3.	ମନୁ ଶୁଣି ଉଠିବିନିମାନୁ ଶୁ.ମନୁ [ଶୁ+ମନୁ] ଧୂଢ଼ିବିବି ଶୁ । I shall go to the <i>market only</i> . What it means is that, of all the people present here and of all the places that we are required to go, it is proposed that I will go to the market only.
4.	ମନୁ ଶୁଣି ଉଠିବିନିମାନୁ ଶୁ.ମନୁ [ଶୁ+ମନୁ] ଧୂଢ଼ିବିବି ଶୁ । Only I shall go to the <i>market</i> . What it means is that, of all the people present here and of all the places that we are required to go, it is proposed that only I will go to the market. But I might go to other places as well. The comments about ଶୁ holds in these cases as well.

Table 3.12

In the above examples, the meanings of all the words in Santali have already been given in the previous examples.

3.3 Verbs and Verb Qualifiers

We have already pointed out that the bound emphazier in a verb structure is not required to be present for the analysis of the verb structure. Besides a verb structure of a sentence with inanimate subject will not have any bound emphazier. Hence, analyzing verb structures without bound emphaziers also helps to look at all verb structures in a uniform way. In the rest of this report, we will analyze verb structures without bound emphaziers, and will not worry about bound emphaziers in any way.

3.3.1 Source of Verb Structure in Santali

In most languages of the world, a verb structure as spoken is usually divided into two parts, viz., *auxiliary verb*, and *principal verb*, in most cases. We shall see in this report that a Santali verb structure can also be divided into an auxiliary verb component and a principal verb component, and give this division for all the verb structures in Santali later in this report. A verb structure in Santali is derived from a sequence of constituent words which we call *verb structure source*. A verb structure source for *almost all verb structures* in Santali essentially consists of the following components in the order given below.

1. A *base component*(if required) consisting of a *main verb* which is optionally followed by a sequence of one or more words, called *verb qualifiers*. The main verb itself consists of a sequence of one or more verbs in base form.
2. A *verbal suffix*(if required), viz., ଶୁଣି/ଶୁଣି/ମନୁ/ଶୁଣି/ଶୁଣି, ବୁଝି, ଶୁଣିବି, ଶୁଣି, ପଢ଼ି, ଶୁଣି/ଶୁଣି, ବୁଝି/ବୁଝି, ଶୁଣିବି/ଶୁଣିବି, ଶୁଣି/ଶୁଣି, ପଢ଼ି/ପଢ଼ି/ପଢ଼ି/ପଢ଼ି, ପଢ଼ି, ଶୁଣି/ଶୁଣି/ଶୁଣି, ଶୁଣିବି/ଶୁଣିବି, ଶୁଣି/ଶୁଣି, ଶୁଣି, ଶୁଣିବି/ଶୁଣିବି, and ଶୁଣି denoting the type, tense etc. of the verb structure. This suffix is not present in a few verb structures only.
3. An *object infix* or a *subject infix*(if required) corresponding to the animate object(if present) or animate subject(if present) respectively in the sentence. The forms of object or subject infix for different pronouns and animate nouns are the same as those of the corresponding bound emphaziers.
4. An *existential infix*(if required) ବୁଝି, ଶୁଣିବି, ଶୁଣି, ଶୁଣିବି etc.

5. An optional *emphasizing infix* ଗଞ୍ଜ .
6. An *possessive infix*(if required) corresponding to the pronoun on whose behalf the action of the verb takes place.
7. A *terminator suffix* finite ଥି or its equivalence like ଧି.ଗଞ୍ଜ, ଠିଞ୍ଜ'ଇ (or its equivalence ଠିଞ୍ଜ'ଇ/ଠିଞ୍ଜ' ବଧିଇ/ଠିଞ୍ଜ'ଓ ବଧିଇ), ଈ (or its equivalence ଈ, ଠିଞ୍ଜ, ଈଞ୍ଜ), ଗଞ୍ଜ, ଉଞ୍ଜ, ଉଞ୍ଜବଧିଇ etc.
8. An optional *bound emphazier suffix* corresponding to animate subject(if present).
9. An optional *free emphazier* like ଠିଞ୍ଜଞ୍ଜ, ଇଞ୍ଜଞ୍ଜ, ଈଞ୍ଜଞ୍ଜ etc.

Almost all verb structures in Santali may be derived from the above verb structure source. A single word verb that has not been modified by merging a verbal suffix with it is said to be in **base form**. There are several kinds of base forms of verbs, and a description of these forms is given in section 4.3.15. When a verbal suffix merges with a verb in base form, the resulting verb is said to be in **suffix form**. Again, there are several kinds of suffixed forms of verbs, and a description of these forms is given in section 4.3.17. A main verb is said to be a **simple main verb** if it consists of a single verb in base form; otherwise, it is said to be a **compound main verb**. *Of all the component in the above verb structure source, component 7, i.e., terminator suffix is always present except in certain rare type of verb structures. An example of such verb structure is given in table 4.22.* Component 1 is present for most verb structures. Component 2 is generally present when component 1 is present, but it may be absent in certain cases. Object infix is always present if there is an animate object to the verb, and there is no subject infix corresponding to animate subject. A subject infix in place of object infix may be present in case of certain verbs which have animate subject. If a subject infix appears in a verb, then there would not be a bound emphazier corresponding to the subject. Component 4 is present in a few verb structures along with component 1, but it may occur without component 1 as well. Other components can be used if they are so required. Besides, it is to be noted that all combinations are not feasible, e.g., emphasizing infix ଗଞ୍ଜ can only pair with terminator suffix finite ଥି, ଠିଞ୍ଜ'ଇ and ଉଞ୍ଜ, but not with other equivalences. Similar restrictions may be there for different kinds of suffixes and infixes. These restrictions would be pointed out while dealing with individual verb structures later on. Also, the *verbal suffix, existential infix, and terminator suffix components* can change the semantics of a verb structure in a significant way, but the *other components* may not really change the semantics of a verb structure significantly.

When the components of a verb structure source are combined to generate the corresponding verb structure, the consecutive neighbouring components may merge to give rise to a single word. The resulting verb structure is then divided into two major components, viz., principal verb and auxiliary verb. *The comments about the pronunciation of a word resulting from a sequential combination of constituent words, given at the beginning of section 3.1, also hold for the pronunciation of each of the word in a verb structure.* Therefore, we shall write the words of a verb structure as they are pronounced, and no attempt will be made to justify the same as their pronunciations have been standardized over centuries. *In many of the previous works, the tendency has been to write a single word for an entire verb structure. In our opinion, this would result in concealing the pronunciation of the individual words in the verb structure, and may result in a wrong pronunciation of the verb structure. Hence, we have followed the principle that each distinctly pronounced word which may be a part of a verb structure or any other word is written separately. Also, a word which has a distinct function is written separately as far as possible to ensure that its functionality is clearly identifiable.* This convention would clearly show each of the distinctly pronounced word of a verb structure, and help to pronounce it correctly.

3.3.2 Auxiliary Verbs

It is our intention in this report to identify all verb structures, and give their meanings in English. In a verb structure, it is mostly the form of auxiliary verb component which greatly determines the meanings associated with the verb structure. In the following, we shall try to identify factors that influence the form of an auxiliary verb. *The form of auxiliary verb(if any) together with the suffix(if any) attached to the principal verb essentially characterizes the various features of the verb structure as a whole such as timing related features of the verb, dependence of the action of the verb on other issues such as order, certainty of the action of the verb, necessity for the action of the verb etc.* The characteristics of auxiliary component of verb structures in two different languages may vary widely, and this issue is beyond the scope of this report. *Besides the above issues, the form of an auxiliary verb also depends on whether the verb structure is of weak or strong type, and on whether the objects(if any) are direct/indirect or animate/inanimate. The forms of all the auxiliary verbs for various verb structures are explained using examples subsequently in this report, but, for the time being, we may just indicate that a particular auxiliary verb is part of weak or strong form of verb structure.* Regarding timing related features of a Santali verb structure, it may denote one or more of the following timing related properties associated with the action of the verb as a whole. Some of these properties are as follows.

1. *Temporal state of action of the verb at the current reference point in time(Not yet started, started but not finished, started and finished):* Many variations of these combinations are possible, and they would be discussed while presenting the actual auxiliary verbs.
2. *State of completion of the work resulting out of the action of the verb when the action stops:* This is a special feature of Santali language where the auxiliary verb together with the suffix attached to the principal verb would assert that the action would be continued till the work resulting out of the action is completed. This is specially true of action that are yet to be over.
3. *Duration of action of the verb:* Even though the action of the verb may take some time physically, the auxiliary verb together with the suffix attached to the principal verb would conceptually indicate that the action has been completed instantaneously or it will take some time to complete.
4. *Repetition of action of the verb:* This feature of the auxiliary verb together with the suffix attached to the principal verb would indicate that the action of the verb will be repeated in the future or has been repeated in the past. Besides, it may also indicate how long the action of repetition would continue.
5. *Imminence of the action of the verb:* This form of the auxiliary verb together with the suffix attached to the principal verb indicates that the action represented by the verb is about to take place.

Besides timing related features, an auxiliary verb component of a Santali verb structure together with the suffix attached to the principal verb may also exhibit one or more of the other properties some of which are given below.

1. *Order:* This form of the auxiliary verb together with the suffix attached to the principal verb denotes that order or advice is being given to the subject to perform the action represented by the verb. Interesting thing is that the order or advice can be given to any person(first, second or third).
2. *Intimation:* This form of auxiliary verb together with the suffix attached to the principal verb denotes that the audience is being informed of the fact that the action represented by

- the verb is going to be performed by the subject now before another action can take place, and there is an implicit request to permit him/her to do so. But a formal approval from the audience is not necessary for the subject to perform the action.
3. *Certainty of the action of the verb*: This form denotes that the action represented by the verb will certainly be performed by the subject or has certainly been performed by the subject.
 4. *Necessity for the action of the verb*: In this case, the form of the auxiliary verb together with the suffix attached to the principal verb denotes that it is necessary to perform the action represented by the verb.

The properties of a form of an auxiliary verb are not static, i.e., the properties associated with it may change depending upon the context. This is not only true of Santali language, but also true of other languages as well (at least the ones which we know of). *Henceforward, for the sake of simplicity, we shall only give translated English sentences of corresponding Santali sentences where the emphasized part of Santali is not italicized in the corresponding English part. This is because the emphasized part of Santali is not really required to understand the basic structure of simple sentences in Santali.* We have already seen a few examples of auxiliary verbs in Santali. In the table 3.14 shown below, we give some additional examples that illustrate varieties of auxiliary verbs in Santali.

1.	<p>ମନ ଖୁସିକରିବା [ଖୁସିକରିବା+ମନ] ଲାଭୁ ବଜିବ ବଜିବି [ଲାଭୁ+ବଜିବ+ବଜିବି+ଅ] । I am eating cooked rice.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ଖୁସିକରିବା means ‘cooked rice’, ଲାଭୁ means ‘to eat’. In the verb structure ଲାଭୁ ବଜିବ ବଜିବି, ଲାଭୁ is the principal verb, and ବଜିବ ବଜିବି is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in present persistent continuous tense and is with inanimate object ଖୁସିକରିବା.</p>
2.	<p>ମନ ଉଠାଉ [ଉଠାଉ+ମନ] ଉଠାଉଅଛି [ଉଠାଉ+ଅଛି+ଉଠାଉ+ଅ] । I am bringing you.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ଉଠାଉ means ‘to bring’. Here, the verb structure is ଉଠାଉଅଛି [ଉଠାଉ+ଅଛି+ଉଠାଉ+ଅ], and ଉଠାଉଅଛି is the principal verb and ଉଠାଉ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in present continuous tense and is with animate object ଉଠାଉ.</p>
3.	<p>ମନ ଉଠାଉ [ଉଠାଉ+ମନ] ଉଠାଉଅଛି [ଉଠାଉ+ଅଛି+ଉଠାଉ+ଅ] । A stone has fallen.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ଉଠାଉ means ‘one’, ଉଠାଉଅଛି means ‘stone’, ଉଠାଉ means ‘to fall’, which is the principal verb, and ଉଠାଉଅଛି is the auxiliary verb in weak form of verb structure that is in present perfect tense.</p>
4.	<p>ମନ ଉଠାଉ [ଉଠାଉ+ମନ] ଉଠାଉଅଛି [ଉଠାଉ+ଅଛି+ଉଠାଉ+ଅ] । He has beaten you.</p> <p>In this sentence, ଉଠାଉ means ‘to beat’, which is the principal verb, and ଉଠାଉଅଛି [ଉଠାଉ+ଅଛି+ଉଠାଉ+ଅ] is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in present perfect tense and is with animate object ଉଠାଉ.</p>
5.	<p>ମନ ଉଠାଉ [ଉଠାଉ+ମନ] ଉଠାଉଅଛି [ଉଠାଉ+ଅଛି+ଉଠାଉ+ଅ] । He beat you.</p> <p>This is the same as the previous sentence except that the verb structure is in past indefinite tense form, and ଉଠାଉଅଛି [ଉଠାଉ+ଅଛି+ଉଠାଉ+ଅ] is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense and is with animate object ଉଠାଉ.</p>

Table 3.14

3.3.3 Principal Verbs

If a base component is present in a verb structure, then it becomes part of the principal verb component of the verb structure. A base component essentially consists of a *main verb* that is optionally followed by a sequence of one or more words, called *verb qualifiers*. The main verb itself consists of a sequence of one or more verbs in base form. The verbal suffix (if present) of the verb structure source may be attached to the last word of the base component which may as

well be a verb in base form; otherwise, the verbal suffix becomes the initial part of the auxiliary verb. Hence, the principal verb could very well be composite. There is nothing unusual about the principal component of a verb structure being composite in Santali, and similar features may be thought to be present in other languages as well in varying degree. In case of English, a verb followed by a preposition may be thought to have such a feature. It is also natural to consider a real action being composed of several sub-actions each of which is represented by a different verb, and a concatenation of these verbs may be able to represent the real action in its totality. Concatenation of verbs in base form gives rise to compound main verbs, and these verbs are quite extensively used in Santali. There is also a good number of verb qualifiers having different kinds of role. A verb qualifier may change the type of a verb structure completely, i.e., strong to weak or vice versa. There are also varieties of features associated verb qualifiers. *However, all the verb qualifiers have something in common, and this common feature is that they occur between the main verb and the verbal suffix(if any). The verbal suffix which is present for most verb structures is unique for each kind of verb structure, and as a result, it is quite easy to identify the verb qualifiers in most verb structures. Even if verbal suffix is not present in a verb structure, terminator suffix would always be present, and these two components together would help to identify the verb qualifiers in a unique way.* If a verbal suffix is attached to the main verb, and the qualifier is put immediately after the main verb, then the verbal suffix is now attached to the qualifier. There may be more than one qualifier applied to the same main verb, and if a verbal suffix is attached to the main verb, it is now attached to the last word in the sequence of verb qualifiers. It is also possible that after the insertion of a verb qualifier, the resulting composite verb may change its characteristics. In this case, it is possible that if there is no verbal suffix attached to the main verb, a verbal suffix may now be required to be attached to the composite verb. Alternately, if there is a verbal suffix attached to the main verb, the verbal suffix may not be required to be attached to the composite verb. A description of some of the verb qualifiers would be given in a subsequent section after we have described the basic structure of simple sentences. In the table 3.15 shown below, we give a few examples of verb qualifiers with some explanation.

1.	<p>ᱠᱤ ᱦᱚᱱᱚᱛ.ᱤ ᱦᱚᱱᱚᱛ+ᱠᱤ ᱤᱞᱤ ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ ᱤᱞᱤ+ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ+ᱤ ᱥ I ate cooked rice.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ᱦᱚᱱᱚᱛ means ‘cooked rice’, and ᱤᱞᱤ means ‘to eat’, which is the main verb. In the verb structure ᱤᱞᱤ ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ, ᱤᱞᱤ is the principal verb, and ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense.</p>
2.	<p>ᱠᱤ ᱦᱚᱱᱚᱛ.ᱤ ᱤᱞᱤ ᱢᱚᱱᱚ ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ ᱤᱞᱤ+ᱢᱚᱱᱚ+ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ+ᱤ ᱥ I ate cooked rice(in much less time than expected).</p> <p>The above sentence is the same as the first sentence of this table except that ᱢᱚᱱᱚ has been added after ᱤᱞᱤ. In this sentence, ᱢᱚᱱᱚ is the verb qualifier qualifying the main verb ᱤᱞᱤ. This qualification essentially means that the action was performed skillfully requiring much less time. In this verb structure, ᱤᱞᱤ ᱢᱚᱱᱚ is the principal verb, and ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense.</p>
3.	<p>ᱠᱤ ᱦᱚᱱᱚᱛ.ᱤ ᱤᱞᱤ ᱯᱚᱨᱚ ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ ᱤᱞᱤ+ᱯᱚᱨᱚ+ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ+ᱤ ᱥ I finished eating cooked rice.</p> <p>In this sentence, instead of ᱢᱚᱱᱚ, ᱯᱚᱨᱚ has been used, which means ‘to happen’. Therefore, what the above sentence means is that my eating of rice is over, i.e., I finished eating cooked rice. In the verb structure ᱤᱞᱤ ᱯᱚᱨᱚ ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ, ᱤᱞᱤ ᱯᱚᱨᱚ is the compound main verb, ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ is the verbal suffix, and finite ᱤᱞᱤ is the terminator suffix, which gives rise to ᱤᱞᱤ ᱯᱚᱨᱚ as the principal verb, and ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ as the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense.</p>
4.	<p>ᱠᱤ ᱦᱚᱱᱚᱛ.ᱤ ᱤᱞᱤ ᱯᱚᱨᱚ ᱢᱚᱱᱚ ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ ᱤᱞᱤ+ᱯᱚᱨᱚ+ᱢᱚᱱᱚ+ᱪᱤᱞᱫᱽ+ᱤ ᱥ I finished eating cooked rice (in much less time than expected).</p> <p>In the verb structure for the above sentence, both ᱯᱚᱨᱚ and ᱢᱚᱱᱚ has been used and therefore, the meaning of these two words also gets added. However, ᱯᱚᱨᱚ is a verb which means ‘to happen’,</p>

	and ଖେଡ଼ is a verb qualifier. Hence, in this verb structure, ଲେଉଟି ଘର is the compound main verb, ଖେଡ଼ is the verb qualifier, ବଜେ is the verbal suffix, and finite ଥି is the terminator suffix, which gives rise to ଲେଉଟି ଘର ଖେଡ଼ as the principal verb, and ବଜେ-ଥି as the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense.
5.	<p>ମା ଖେଡ଼ିବି.ମା ଲେଉଟି ଘର ବଜେ-ଥି ଲେଉଟି+ଘର+ବଜେ+ଥି । I completed eating cooked rice.</p> <p>In the verb structure of the above sentence, ଲେଉଟି.ଘର is a verb which means ‘to complete’. Hence, in this verb structure, ଲେଉଟି ଘର is the compound main verb, ବଜେ is the verbal suffix, and finite ଥି is the terminator suffix, which gives rise to ଲେଉଟି ଘର as the principal verb, and ବଜେ-ଥି as the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense.</p>

Table 3.15

It is quite common in many languages that a group of words acts as a single parts of speech, and in Santali, this feature is widely prevalent not only in principal and auxiliary verbs, but in other parts of speech as well. Hence, it is not essential to ask the parts of speech of a single word if it does not make sense, but we should find the sequence of words that contains this word, and that makes a proper parts of speech. The other alternative is to write these sequence of words as a single word, and this single word can be characterized as a single parts of speech. For the sake of clarity, the former option is always better. Also, it is not always possible to combine a sequence of words into a single word.

3.3.4 Nouns and Adjectives used as Verbs

In Santali, both nouns and adjectives can also be used as verbs. When an adjective is used as a verb, it means the act of acquiring or rendering the property represented by the adjective. When a noun is used as a verb, it means the act of becoming or making an object represented by the noun. The table 3.16 shown below gives an illustration of how nouns and adjectives may be used as verbs.

1.	<p>ବେଗେ [ବେଗ+ଘେ] ଓଠି.ଘେ ଥେଉ । He became a tiger.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ବେଗେ means ‘he’, and ଓଠି.ଘେ means ‘tiger’ which is used as a main verb to mean ‘to become a tiger’. In this verb structure, ଓଠି.ଘେ is the principal verb, and ଥେଉ is the auxiliary verb in weak form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense.</p>
2.	<p>ବେଗେ ଘେଉଠେ ଗେଉ । He is becoming a ghost.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ଘେଉଠେ means ‘a ghost’ which is used here as a main verb to mean ‘to become a ghost’. In this verb structure, ଘେଉଠେ is the principal verb, and ଗେଉ is the auxiliary verb in weak form of verb structure that is in present continuous tense.</p>
3.	<p>ମା ଥେଉଗେ [ଥେଉ+ଗେ] ଘେଉ ଘେଉ । I blackened you.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ମା means ‘I’, ଥେଉ means ‘you’, and ଘେଉ ଘେଉ means ‘black’ which is used here as a main verb to mean ‘to blacken’. In this verb structure, ଘେଉ ଘେଉ is the principal verb, and ଗେଉ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense and is with animate object ଥେଉ.</p>
4.	<p>ଥେଉଗେ [ଥେଉ+ଗେ] ଘେଉଠେ ଥେଉ । You will be afraid.</p> <p>In the above sentence, ଥେଉ means ‘you’, and ଘେଉଠେ means ‘afraid’ which is used here as a main verb to mean ‘to be afraid’. In this verb structure, ଘେଉଠେ is the principal verb, and ଥେଉ is the auxiliary verb in weak form of verb structure that is in future indefinite tense.</p>

Table 3.16

It has been noted in [2] that “practically, all words may function as nouns, adjectives, verbs and adverbs, without any alteration in forms; furthermore, words are not exclusively nouns, or adjectives etc., but function as such”. We must say that this statement is not only incorrect but also highly misleading for the following reasons.

1. First of all, it would be difficult to find a word in Santali which may function as all of the four parts of speech, viz., noun, adjective, verb, and adverb, without any alteration. A word may function as noun, adjective and verb or as adjective, verb and adverb, and so on, but certainly not as all of the above four parts of speech.
2. Looking at the dictionary of any language, one can easily find many words which are used as different parts of speech without any alteration. Therefore, this feature is not exclusive to Santali language.
3. A noun is a word which would get associated with an object (concrete or abstract) when it is spoken alone, and this concept is independent of any language. Hence, even if such a word can be used as adjective or verb without alteration, its natural association would always be with noun in the above sense. These are the words which can be termed as nouns, but may also be used as other parts of speech as well without any alteration. When a noun is spoken alone in Santali, be it a proper noun, a common noun, a collective noun or a material noun, it carries the same meaning as that in any other language. Therefore, it is incorrect to say that words in Santali are not exclusively nouns, or adjectives etc. A noun in Santali is certainly a noun unless it is used otherwise, and the same is true in any other language. Examples of words in English which are nouns but can also be used as verbs without any alteration are ‘water’, ‘plant’, ‘comb’, ‘clip’, ‘heat’ etc.
4. An adjective is a word that qualifies a noun or a pronoun, and hence, it makes sense when it is used as such. However, if a word is spoken alone and the natural question that arises in mind is what is the object that it qualifies, then we can say that the word is an adjective. Hence, even if such a word can be used as verb or noun without alteration, its natural association would always be with adjective in the above sense. These are the words which can be termed as adjectives, but may also be used as other parts of speech as well without any alteration. In other languages also, there are many words which are adjectives in the above sense, but can be used as other parts of speech as well without any alteration. Hence, the concept that a particular word is adjective is independent of any language, and it is incorrect to say that words in Santali are not exclusively nouns, or adjectives etc. Some examples of words in English which are basically adjective in the above sense, but can also be used as noun or verb without any alteration are ‘valuable’, ‘Indian’, ‘variable’, ‘subordinate’ etc.
5. A verb is a word that is associated an action in the sense that when such a word is spoken alone, the focus is on the act of performing the action rather than on its interpretation as noun or adjective or adverb. Hence, even if such a word can be used as noun or adjective without any alteration, its natural association would always be with verb in the above sense. These are the words which can be termed as verbs, but may also be used as other parts of speech as well without any alteration. In English, to indicate that a particular word is verb, ‘to’ is used before it as in ‘to dance’, but this is not an alteration, since when it is used as a finite verb in a sentence, it is used without ‘to’. The same holds for Hindi where ‘na’ is suffixed to indicate a verb. Besides, in other languages also, there are many words which are verbs in the above sense, but can be used as other parts of speech as well without any alteration. Hence, the concept that a particular word is verb is independent of any language, and it is incorrect to say that words in Santali are not exclusively nouns, or adjectives etc. Some examples of words in English which are

basically verbs in the above sense, but can also be used as noun or adjective without any alteration are ‘dance’, ‘roar’, ‘fly’, ‘make’ etc.

6. An adverb is a word that qualifies any word other than a noun or a pronoun, and hence there are various kinds of adverbs. For the sake of discussion, let us focus on adverbs that qualify verbs. Among these adverbs, adverbs of manner are the ones which are most frequently used in Santali. Adverbs of manner usually come as double word (but not necessary) as in ᱯᱟᱥᱱᱟᱜ-ᱯᱟᱥᱱᱟᱜ which means ‘quickly’. When such a word is spoken alone in any language, the natural question that arises in mind is what is the action that it qualifies. Hence, this concept is independent of any language. Even though some of these words can be used as verbs in Santali without any alteration, their natural association is always with adverbs in the above sense. These are the words which can be termed as adverbs, but may also be used as other parts of speech as well without any alteration. In other languages also, there are many words which are used as adverb in the above sense, can be used as other parts of speech as well without any alteration. Hence, the concept that a particular word is adverb is independent of any language, and it is incorrect to say that words in Santali are not exclusively nouns, or adjectives etc.
7. In summary, Santali is just like any other language in the sense that (i) the same word may be used as different parts of speech in different sentences without any alteration, but (ii) most words have a natural association with some parts of speech in the sense as explained above. If a word has a natural association with a certain parts of speech in the sense as explained above, we say that the word naturally belongs to that parts of speech. However, there will always be some words in whose cases it may be difficult to determine the natural parts of speech of these words. In such cases, the natural parts of speech of these words is decided in most languages by convention. *It is to be noted that the dictionaries of most languages reel out the meanings of a word as different parts of speech in the order of its decreasing association to these parts of speech.* For example, in English dictionaries, the meaning of word ‘dance’ is given as verb first, and then as noun, but the meaning of word ‘water’ is given as noun first, and then as verb.

It has also been noted in [2] that “every Santal word may function as a verb; moreover, when functioning as a verb, the base word itself is not altered”. This statement is also incorrect and gives an incorrect picture of Santali language depicting it as a language which is very much different from most other languages in this respect. The reason for this observation is given below.

1. Certainly, not every Santal word can be used as a verb, and one can give an endless list of words which cannot be used as verbs. For example, proper nouns, pronouns, most varieties of adjectives etc. cannot be used as verbs.
2. If a Santal word can be used as verb, then a corresponding word in most languages can get closely knitted to the verb structure with the same meaning (certainly not as object of a verb) using some mechanism which is specific to the languages. If a Santal word cannot be used as verb, then it is said in [2] that it is because no proper meaning can be attached to the word as verb. However, for the very same reason, a corresponding word in most languages cannot get closely knitted to the verb structure (not as object of a verb) using mechanism which is used for such purposes. Hence, the reason for not being able to bind a word as a part of verb structure in some sense (not as object of a verb) is the same in all languages, and Santali is no different from other languages as far as this feature is concerned.
3. As far as altering the base component of a verb structure is concerned, it does get altered in tenses where verbal suffix merges with the base component. We have already given

examples of such merging. The merging of verbal suffix with the main verb depends only on the form and the tense of the verb structure, but it is not exactly the same as the conjugation of verbs. Hence, we have termed the form of a verb, obtained by appending a verbal suffix to the verb in base form, as the **suffix form of verb**. The tenses where this merging takes place have been identified later in the report.

3.4 Pronouns

In the section, we shall give partial lists of different kinds of commonly used pronouns along with their English equivalence. In Santali also, there are different kinds of pronouns. Most commonly used among them are personal, interrogative, relative, definite, indefinite, and distributive pronouns. In the following subsections, descriptions of each of these pronouns are briefly given.

3.4.1 Personal Pronouns

The list of personal pronouns is already given in section 3.1 in table 3.8 along their meanings in English. It is to be noted that, in Santali, there are no different forms of personal pronouns for their use in different cases except when they are used in possessive case. The forms of personal pronouns in possessive case are also known as *possessive adjectives*. A personal pronoun may also look to be modified when it is followed by a bound emphasizer which gets joined to it. But this is not really a different form of the personal pronoun corresponding to its different use, and we would consider it to be in unmodified form. A personal pronoun in possessive case has three different forms depending on whether the object being possessed is inanimate, singular animate, or plural animate. In case the object being possessed is singular animate, and is a relative, there is also a slightly different way of expressing the possession in certain cases which would also be illustrated using examples in this section. The three different forms of possessive adjectives for all the personal pronouns are listed in the table 3.17 given below.

Personal Pronouns in Santali	Person and Number	Personal Pronouns in English	Possessive Adjectives for Inanimate Object	Possessive Adjectives for Singular, Animate Object	Possessive Adjectives for Plural, Animate Object	Possessive Adjectives in English
ᱠᱚ	First, Singular	I	ᱠᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱠᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱠᱚ ᱵᱚᱨ	My
ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ	First, Dual	Two of us(including listener)	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ ᱵᱚᱨ	Our
ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ	First, Dual	Two of us(excluding listener)	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ ᱵᱚᱨ	Our
ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ	First, Plural	We(including listener)	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ ᱵᱚᱨ	Our
ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ	First, Plural	We(excluding listener)	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ ᱵᱚᱨ	Our
ᱡᱚ	Second,	You	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚᱵᱚᱨ	ᱡᱚ ᱵᱚᱨ	Your

	Singular					
ଅ.ଠାଏ	Second, Dual	Two of you	ଅ.ଠାଏଞ୍ଜେ	ଅ.ଠାଏଠା	ଅ.ଠାଏ ଢାଏ	Your
ଅଠିଠି	Second, Plural	You	ଅଠିଠିଞ୍ଜେ	ଅଠିଠିଠା	ଅଠିଠି ଢାଏ	Your
ଅଁ	Third, Singular	He/She	ଅଁଞ୍ଜେ	ଅଁଠା	ଅଁ ଢାଏ	His/Her
ଅ.ବାଏ	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଅ.ବାଏଞ୍ଜେ	ଅ.ବାଏଠା	ଅ.ବାଏ ଢାଏ	Their
ଅବିଠି	Third, Plural	They	ଅବିଠିଞ୍ଜେ	ଅବିଠିଠା	ଅବିଠି ଢାଏ	Their
ଏଠି	Third, Singular	He(far)	ଏଠିଞ୍ଜେ	ଏଠିଠା	ଏଠି ଢାଏ	His/Her
ଏଠିବାଏ	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଏଠିବାଏଞ୍ଜେ	ଏଠିବାଏଠା	ଏଠିବାଏ ଢାଏ	Their
ଏଠିବି	Third, Plural	They	ଏଠିବିଞ୍ଜେ	ଏଠିବିଠା	ଏଠିବି ଢାଏ	Their
ଓଠି.ଠି	Third, Singular	He(very far)	ଓଠି.ଠିଞ୍ଜେ	ଓଠି.ଠିଠା	ଓଠି.ଠି ଢାଏ	His/Her
ଓଠି.ଠିବାଏ	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଓଠି.ଠିବାଏଞ୍ଜେ	ଓଠି.ଠିବାଏଠା	ଓଠି.ଠିବାଏ ଢାଏ	Their
ଓଠି.ଠିବି	Third, Plural	They	ଓଠି.ଠିବିଞ୍ଜେ	ଓଠି.ଠିବିଠା	ଓଠି.ଠିବି ଢାଏ	Their
ଠିବି	Third, Singular	He(very near)	ଠିବିଞ୍ଜେ	ଠିବିଠା	ଠିବି ଢାଏ	His/Her
ଠିବିବାଏ	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଠିବିବାଏଞ୍ଜେ	ଠିବିବାଏଠା	ଠିବିବାଏ ଢାଏ	Their
ଠିବିବି	Third, Plural	They	ଠିବିବିଞ୍ଜେ	ଠିବିବିଠା	ଠିବିବି ଢାଏ	Their

Table 3.17

3.5 Nouns

3.6 Adjectives

3.7 Other Parts of Speech

4 Basic Structure Of Simple Sentences

As in any other language, a simple sentence in Santali with minimal number of components consists of a subject followed by a verb structure. Quite a few examples of such sentences have been given earlier. *Additional components of a simple sentence including objects of the verb are normally placed between the subject and the verb structure, although a component of a simple sentence other than the subject, and the word making the sentence negative may also be placed after the verb structure.* If a component of a simple sentence is an object of the verb, then no postposition is used after it to make its connection with the verb, but in most other cases, a postposition is used after a component to make its connection with the verb. Normally, a postposition may or may not be used after an adverb to make its connection with the verb. In many languages, a postposition is not used after an adverb, but in Santali, a postposition may be required after an adverb to make its connection with the verb. In the table 4.1. shown below, we give a few examples of simple sentences illustrating their major components. Please note that the headers of the table apply only to the sentences in Santali.

	Subject	Other Components	Objects	Principal Verb	Auxiliary Verb
1.	ᱤᱨᱢᱟ		ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ [ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ+ᱤᱨᱢᱟ]	ᱤᱨᱢᱟ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱤᱨᱢᱟ ᱤᱨᱢᱟ
	I have eaten cooked rice.				
	In the above sentence, ᱤᱨᱢᱟ means 'I', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'cooked rice' although it can be used for 'general food' as well, ᱤᱨᱢᱟ means to 'to eat', and ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱤᱨᱢᱟ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in present perfect tense and is with inanimate object.				
2.	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ [ᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ+ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ]		ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱤᱨᱢᱟ
	He is going to the market.				
	In the above sentence, ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'he', ᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'market', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'to go' to which verbal suffix ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is attached to get ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ, and ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱤᱨᱢᱟ is the auxiliary verb in weak form of verb structure that is in present continuous tense.				
3.	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ		ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ
	An elephant killed a tiger by stamping it.				
	In this sentence, ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'an elephant', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'a tiger', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'to stamp with foot', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'to kill', and ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in past indefinite tense and is with an animate object of type third person and singular number. ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is the principal verb which is composite in nature, and in which ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is the main verb, and ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ acts as the verb qualifier.				
4.	ᱤᱨᱢᱟ		ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱤᱨᱢᱟ
	I am buying you a book.				
	In this sentence, ᱤᱨᱢᱟ means 'I', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'you', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'a book', ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ means 'to buy'. Also, ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is the principal verb, and ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in present continuous tense and is with indirect object ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ.				
5.	ᱤᱨᱢᱟ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ	ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ ᱤᱨᱢᱟ
	I am buying a book for you.				
	This is the same as the previous sentence except that ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is no longer an indirect object to the verb ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ, but it is connected with it using the postposition ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ which means 'for' in this case. Now the only object to the verb ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ which is inanimate, and therefore, principal verb has become ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ, and ᱚᱱᱚᱛᱤᱨᱢᱟᱨᱤ is the auxiliary verb in strong form of verb structure that is in present continuous tense and is with inanimate object.				

Table 4.1

In the following, we shall first describe the verb structures of Santali which are simple, and have lesser number of components. Subsequently, we shall describe the verb structures which are more complex, but are derivable from the verb structures described here by concatenating additional words to them.

4.1 Structure of Basic Simple Sentences

Essentially, there are two types of basic simple sentences in Santali. The *first type of simple sentences* consists of a sequence of words, which begins with a subject, is followed by a noun/noun-equivalent word, and is terminated with the principal verb $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ [$\text{b}\partial\text{e}+\partial$] which means ‘is/am/are’ in this case or $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ [$\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}+\partial$] (or its equivalence) which means ‘was/were’ in this case. Note that there is no base component in this principal verb, but it is obtainable from the general verb structure source. A simple sentence of this type is roughly equivalent to a simple sentence in English of type ‘Subject + verb to be + noun/noun-equivalent complement’. For this type of simple sentences in Santali, there is no corresponding equivalence of them in the future tense. The *second type of simple sentences* consists of a sequence of words, which begins with a subject, is followed by an adjective/adjective-equivalent word, and is terminated with the terminator suffix finite ∂ which may mean either ‘is/am/are’ or ‘will be/shall be’ in this case or $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ [$\text{b}\partial\text{e}+\partial$] which means ‘is/am/are’ in this case or $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ [$\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}+\partial$ or $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ (or its equivalence)] which means ‘was/were’ in this case. A simple sentence of this kind in Santali is roughly equivalent to a simple sentence in English of type ‘Subject + verb to be + adjective/adjective-equivalent complement’. *It is to be noted that the adjective may now be considered as a part of the verb, but these three basic forms of verb structure are different from the weak forms of verb structure given later.* It is to be noted that the emphasizing infix GZ is normally used with such sentences. Moreover, $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}'\text{e}$ can be used as an independent verb which means ‘to stay’, and when it is used in an auxiliary verb as component 4 or 7 of general verb structure source, its meaning in the auxiliary verb is basically derived from the above meaning of $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}'\text{e}$. The use of $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}'\text{e}$ as a part of auxiliary verb is similar to the use of ‘thak’ in Bengali and ‘rohna’ in Hindi. *We shall refer to the form of verb structures of these two types of simple sentences in Santali as the **basic form** of verb structure in Santali. On a closer look, one can easily discern that the advanced forms of verb structures of Santali, viz., weak and strong form, have essentially evolved from the basic form.* It is also to be noted that the two types of simple sentences gives rise to five basic forms of verb structure of Santali. In the table 4.2 shown below, quite a few examples of simple sentences of these types are given for illustration.

	Tense of the Forms	Examples of Basic Form of Verb Structures	Type of Simple Sentence
1.	Present indefinite tense	$\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ $\text{G}\partial$ $\text{O}\partial\text{e}$ $\omega\partial\partial$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ [$\text{b}\partial\text{e}+\partial+\text{Z}$] ∂ He is a good man.	Subject + noun/noun-equivalence + $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$
	In this sentence, $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ means ‘he’, $\text{O}\partial\text{e}$ means ‘good’, and $\omega\partial\partial$ means ‘a man’. Here, $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ is the subject, $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ is the principal verb, and $\text{O}\partial\text{e}$ $\omega\partial\partial$ is considered as a complement to the principal verb $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$.		
2.	Past indefinite tense	$\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ $\text{G}\partial$ $\text{O}\partial\text{e}$ $\omega\partial\partial$ $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$ [$\text{b}\partial\text{e}+\partial+\text{Z}$] ∂ He was a good man.	Subject + noun/noun-equivalence + $\text{O}\partial\omega\text{Z}$ $\text{b}\partial\text{e}\partial$

	This is the same as the previous sentence except that ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ has been replaced by ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ. Here also, ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ is considered as a complement to the principal verb ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ.		
3.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ [ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ] । This vegetable dish is very tasty.	Subject + adjective/adjective- equivalence + ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ
	In this sentence, ଠଉରା means 'this', ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ means 'vegetable dish', ଠଉରା means 'very', and ଠଉରା means 'tasty'. The terminator suffix finite ଠଉ merges with the word ଠଉରା, and therefore, ଠଉରା is considered as the principal verb. This tense is treated as a present indefinite tense if the statement relates to quality rather than action.		
4.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା [ଠଉରା+ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ] । This vegetable dish is certainly very tasty.	Subject + adjective/adjective- equivalence + ଠଉ + ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ
	This is the same as the previous sentence except that the emphasizing infix ଠଉ has now been added to the sentence just before finite ଠଉ as per general verb structure source. The role of emphasizing infix is to emphasize the fact that the statement is certainly more true, and the emphasizing infix precisely does the same. In this sentence, ଠଉରା is considered as the principal verb, and ଠଉରା is considered as the auxiliary verb.		
5.	Present indefinite tense	ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ [ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ] । This vegetable dish is very tasty.	Subject + adjective/adjective- equivalence + ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ + ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ
	This is also the same as the previous two sentences except that finite ଠଉ is now replaced by ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ. This kind of sentences is very restrictive in the sense that only those kinds of adjectives which are felt by the speaker or the subject may be used here. In this sentence, ଠଉରା is considered as the principal verb, and ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ is considered as the auxiliary verb.		
6.	Present indefinite tense	ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ [ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ+ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ] । This vegetable dish is certainly very tasty.	Subject + adjective/adjective- equivalence + ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ + ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ
	This is the same as the previous sentence except that emphasizing infix ଠଉ has been added just before finite ଠଉ and there is now more weight on the validity of the statement. In this sentence, ଠଉରା is considered as the principal verb, and ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା is considered as the auxiliary verb.		
7.	Past indefinite tense	ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ [ଠଉରା+ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ] । This vegetable dish was very tasty.	Subject + adjective/adjective- equivalence + ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ
	This is the past indefinite tense form of the example in 3 or 5 above. It can be obtained from 3 above by replacing ଠଉ with ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ or from 5 above by replacing ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ with ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ. In this sentence, ଠଉରା is considered as the principal verb, and ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ is considered as the auxiliary verb.		
8.	Past indefinite tense	ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ [ଠଉରା+ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ+ଠଉରା+ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ] । This vegetable dish was certainly very tasty.	Subject + adjective/adjective- equivalence + ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ + ଠଉ + ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ
	This is the same as the previous sentence except that emphasizing infix ଠଉ has been added just before finite ଠଉ. In this sentence, ଠଉରା is considered as the principal verb, and ଠଉରା ବଞ୍ଚିଲେ ଠଉରା is considered as the auxiliary verb.		

Table 4.2

	In this sentence, <i>ଏକା</i> means ‘he’, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘a wheel’, and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘to rotate’. Here, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is an inanimate object of the verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> , and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is a transitive verb in this case.	
4.	<i>ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ ଓଡ଼ି ଘୁରୁଅ</i> [ଘୁରୁଅ+ଓଡ଼ି+ଘୁରୁଅ] । This wheel is rotating.	Intransitive verb
	In this sentence, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘this’, and there is no object to the verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> , and therefore, it has been used here as an intransitive verb.	
5.	<i>ଏକା ତୁମେ [ତୁମେ+ଏକା] ଘୁରୁଅ</i> [ଘୁରୁଅ+ତୁମେ+ଏକା] । He brought you(not really possible in English).	Transitive verb with direct animate object
	In this sentence, <i>ଏକା</i> means ‘he’, <i>ତୁମେ</i> means ‘you’, and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘to bring’. Here, <i>ତୁମେ</i> is used as a direct object to the verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> , and therefore, it has been used as a transitive verb with direct animate object.	
6.	<i>ଏକା ତୁମେ ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ</i> [ଘୁରୁଅ+ତୁମେ+ଏକା] । He brought you a glass of water.	Transitive verb with indirect animate object
	In this sentence, <i>ଏକା</i> means ‘he’, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘one’, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘glass’, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘water’, and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘a glass of water’. Here, <i>ତୁମେ</i> is the indirect object, and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is the direct object to the verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> , and hence, in this case, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is a transitive verb with indirect animate object.	
7.	<i>ଏକା ତୁମେ ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ</i> [ଘୁରୁଅ+ତୁମେ+ଏକା] । He spat on you.	Transitive verb with indirect animate object
	In this sentence, <i>ଏକା</i> means ‘he’, <i>ତୁମେ</i> means ‘you’, and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘to spit’. Here, <i>ତୁମେ</i> is the indirect animate object of verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> . Normally, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is an intransitive verb, but with indirect animate object, it has become possible to use it as a transitive verb, and note that it does not have a direct inanimate object.	
8.	<i>ଏକା ତୁମେ ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ</i> [ଘୁରୁଅ+ତୁମେ+ଏକା] । He spat on you.	Intransitive verb
	This is the same as the previous sentence, and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘on top of’. Here, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is an intransitive verb, and therefore, <i>ତୁମେ</i> is connected with the verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> using the postpositional phrase <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> .	
9.	<i>ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ</i> [ଘୁରୁଅ+ତୁମେ+ଏକା] । I am hammering on the stone.	Transitive verb with indirect inanimate object
	In this sentence, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘I’, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘stone’, and <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> means ‘to hammer’. In this case, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is an indirect inanimate object of verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> since the action of hammering on the stone is the goal by itself.	
10.	<i>ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ ଘୁରୁଅ</i> [ଘୁରୁଅ+ତୁମେ+ଏକା] । I am hammering the stone.	Transitive verb with direct inanimate object
	This is the same as the previous sentence. In this case, <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> is a direct inanimate object of verb <i>ଘୁରୁଅ</i> since the action of hammering on the stone has a definite purpose other than hammering.	

Table 4.3

4.3 Strong and Weak Forms of Verb Structures

In Santali, there are two broad classes of verb structures which we call them as weak and strong form of verb structures besides the basic form discussed earlier. *These structures are such that each weak form has a corresponding strong form with exactly the same semantics. A verb is said to be used in weak(strong) form if it has been used in a weak(strong) form of verb structure. An intransitive verb is used either in strong form or in weak form, but not in both forms in most cases. The verbs which can be transitive may be used in both strong as well as weak form.* In case of weak form of verb structure, the form of verb structure mainly depends on the tense of the form. But, in case of strong form of verb structure, the form of verb structure also depends on one of the following factors: (i) the verb has a direct inanimate object or no object,

7.	Past perfect tense (ଏକାଦଶିକା ଶୁଣିବା କରିବା)	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା ପରେ-କି [ଶୁଣିବା+ପରେ+କି] । I had run (before another implied event). Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ-କି	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା ପରେ [ଶୁଣିବା+ପରେ] । I had gone (before another implied event). Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ
8.	Present imperative tense (ଏକାଦଶିକା ଶୁଣିବା କରିବା)	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା (କି) [ଶୁଣିବା+କି] । I order/advise myself to run. Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: (କି)	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା ପରେ (କି) [ଶୁଣିବା+ପରେ+କି] । I order/advise myself to go. Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: (କି)
9.	Present persistent imperative tense (ଏକାଦଶିକା ଶୁଣିବା କରିବା)	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା ବାବଦ (କି) [ଶୁଣିବା+ବାବଦ+କି] । I order/advise myself to run (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: ବାବଦ (କି)	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା ପରେ ବାବଦ (କି) [ଶୁଣିବା+ପରେ+ବାବଦ+କି] । I order/advise myself to go (with a view to reach the destination, and remain there). Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: ବାବଦ (କି)
10.	Present Informative tense (ଏକାଦଶିକା ଶୁଣିବା କରିବା)	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା ପରେ ଶୁଣିବା [ଶୁଣିବା+ପରେ+ଶୁଣିବା] । Let me run. Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ ଶୁଣିବା	ଆମେ ଶୁଣିବା ପରେ ଶୁଣିବା [ଶୁଣିବା+ପରେ+ଶୁଣିବା] । Let me go. Principal verb: ଶୁଣିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ ଶୁଣିବା

Table 4.4

In the table 4.4 given above, we have listed all the verb structures using only the verbal suffix, existential infix ବାବଦ, and terminator suffix finite କି or its equivalences (କି) and ଶୁଣିବା. These verb structures may be considered as the basic verb structures of Santali language together with a few other verb structures to be given later. Inanimate subjects are normally used together with weak form of verb structures, and they will not have any bound emphazier. But when they are used together with strong form of verb structures, they are treated like animate subjects of third person, and have a bound emphazier. **This is contrary to popular belief that animate and inanimate subjects are always distinguished in the verb except in rare cases where natural force is involved**[2]. Appendix C1-C12 gives weak forms of verb structures of intransitive verbs for different subjects. Appendix C13-C24 gives the corresponding strong forms of verb structures of intransitive verbs and transitive verbs with inanimate object for different subjects. The use of other components from the general verb structure source would result in more complex verb structures which would be described later. The following points must be noted about the verb structures given in the table 4.4 above.

1. Strong and weak forms of verb structures are clearly distinguishable, and they are also very much structurally correlated. Existence of intransitive verbs for both forms in large numbers shows that it is incorrect to equate these two forms of verb structures in Santali, viz., strong and weak, with active and passive voice respectively of English and other Indic languages.
2. The verb ଶୁଣିବା is always intransitive, and it is always used in strong form of verb structure. Some of the other verbs which are used like verb ଶୁଣିବା are ଶୁଣିବା which means 'to cry', ଶୁଣିବା which means 'to laugh', ଶୁଣିବା which means 'to jump' etc. A significant number of verbs belong to this category. However, some of these verbs may also be used as a transitive verb with indirect object or as intransitive verb in weak form. A list of these verbs together with their various forms is given in appendix A2.

- | Tense of the Verbs | Subjects of Second Person Type | Examples of Sentences in Which Subject is Emphasized | Examples of Sentences in Which Verb is Emphasized |
|--|---|--|---|
| Present Imperative Tense
(ධව්‍යවිචාර උපදෙස් උච්ඡේද) | 1. නිඟ (Singular Number) | a. නිඟට දන්වා දමනවා (නි) You are ordered/advised to run. | a. නිඟ දන්වා දම (ද) දන්වා දමනවා You run. |
| | | b. නිඟට දන්වා දමනවා (නි) You are ordered/advised to go. | b. නිඟ දන්වා දමනවා දම (ද) දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා You go. |
| | 2. නිඟ් (Dual Number) | a. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා (නි) Two of you are ordered/advised to run. | a. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා දම (ද) දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා Two of you run. |
| | | b. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා (නි) Two of you are ordered/advised to go. | b. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා දම (ද) දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා දමනවා Two of you go. |
| | 3. නිඟ් (Plural Number) | a. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා (නි) You are ordered/advised to run. | a. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා දම (ද) දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා You run. |
| | b. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා (නි) You are ordered/advised to go. | b. නිඟ් දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා දම (ද) දන්වා දමනවා දමනවා දමනවා You go. | |

Present Persistent Imperative Tense (<i>ଇତେପିଆଗେ,</i> <i>ଠିକିଠିକି</i> <i>ଫିରାଫିରା</i>)	(Plural Number)	[<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା</i>] You are ordered/advised to run.	[<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା</i>] You run.
		b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You are ordered/advised to go.	b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You go.
	1. <i>ଫିରା</i> (Singular Number)	a. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You are ordered/advised to run(till some desired objective is achieved).	a. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You continue to run(till some desired objective is achieved).
		b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You are ordered/advised to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You continue to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
	2. <i>ଫିରା</i> (Dual Number)	a. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] Two of you are ordered/advised to run(till some desired objective is achieved).	a. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] Two of you continue to run(till some desired objective is achieved).
		b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] Two of you are ordered/advised to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] Two of you continue to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
	3. <i>ଫିରା</i> (Plural Number)	a. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You are ordered/advised to run(till some desired objective is achieved).	a. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା.ଆ+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You continue to run(till some desired objective is achieved).
		b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You are ordered/advised to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	b. <i>ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା ଫିରା</i> [<i>ଫିରା+ଫିରା+ଫିରା</i>] You continue to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).

Table 4.5

4.3.2 Naming of the Tenses

Wherever *ଫିରା* or *ଫିରା* is used, there is an implied persistence on behalf of the subject to continue the action of the verb or to remain in the state resulting due to the completion of the action of the verb till the desired task is completed, and this fact has been noted by Rev. P. O. Boddington himself[2]. *What it means is that, in the former case, it would take some time to complete the action of the verb, and the subject would persist in continuing the action till the desired objective is achieved. In the later case, the subject would persist in the state resulting due to the completion of the action of the verb till the desired objective is achieved.* Hence, we thought it appropriate to include the word ‘persistent’ in the name of these tenses. Form 1 may be used both as a present indefinite tense as well as a future indefinite tense, but it is generally used as future indefinite tense. It is used as present indefinite tense when the verb is qualified appropriately with an adverb. Form 2 together with the above observation makes sure that the action will take place in the future, and hence, we have named it as future persistent indefinite tense. Form 3 corresponds to present continuous tense, and denotes that the action is happening

4.3.3 Uses of the Tenses and Translation of Simple Sentences with Intransitive Verbs to English

A. Uses of Present/Future Indefinite Tense Forms

-
- 29

- ## B. Uses of Future Persistent indefinite Tense Forms

- ### C. Uses of Present Continuous Tense Forms

-
- 30

(iv) *To denote an action that took place in the past regularly, and that is continuing to be repeated till the current instant of time:* *ଏକା ଡାଏ ବାଥ୍‌ଓଓ ୧ ଡାଏ ବାଥ୍‌ଓଓ ।* He is taking bath everyday. In this example, *ଏକା* means ‘he’, *ଡାଏ ବାଥ୍‌ଓଓ* means ‘everyday’, and *ବା* means ‘to take bath’. It is to be noted that this use of present continuous tense form cannot be interpreted as present indefinite tense representing universal truth. That is, from the above sentence, we cannot infer that the action of taking bath is of habitual nature, but he has been doing it so far regularly. Such sentences should be translated to present continuous tense in English.

(i) To denote an action that is taking place at the current instant of time together with the fact that the subject would persist in continuing the action till some desired objective is achieved: ካረገ ይኮርዝ ፍጻሜውን ጋ ሠርቦ ካልመጣ ፡ He is coming up to this place. In this example, ካረገ means ‘he’, ይኮርዝ means ‘this place’, ፍጻሜውን means ‘up to’, and ሠርቦ means ‘to come’. The above sentence means that currently he is coming, and will continue to come till he reaches this place. Sentences of this kind may normally be translated to present continuous tense in English.

(ii) To denote an action that is taking place at the current instant of time together with the fact that the subject would persist in the state resulting due to the completion of the action of the verb till some desired objective is achieved: ካረገ ይኮርዝ [ይኮርዝ+ጋ] ካለኮ ካል መጣ ፡ He is standing in the shadow here (and will remain here till some desired objective is achieved). In this example, ካረገ means ‘he’, ይኮርዝ means ‘here’, and ካለኮ means ‘to stand in the shadow’. The above sentence means that currently he is standing in the shadow here, and will continue to stand here till some desired objective is achieved. These sentences also may normally be translated to present continuous tense in English.

(iii) To denote an action that took place in the past regularly and that is continuing to be repeated till the current instant of time. In addition, whenever the action took place, the subject would persist either in continuing the action or in the state resulting due to the completion of the action of the verb, till some desired objective is achieved: ካረገ ፍጹም ሰዓት በየቀኑ ይኮርዝ [ይኮርዝ+ጋ] ካለኮ ካል መጣ ፡ He is standing in the shadow here everyday. This is the same example as in D(ii) above except that the verb is now qualified using the adverb ፍጹም ሰዓት which means ‘everyday’. The above sentence means that the action of standing in shadow has been repeated in the past everyday, and each time, it was continued till some desired objective was achieved, but it does not give a hint as to what would happen in the future. These sentences may also be translated to English as present continuous tense.

(i) To denote an action that has been completed in the immediate past: ካረገ ቀገረ [ቀገ+ገ] (Q2ገ2ቀ ገብገረገ) ፤ He has woken up. In this example, ካረገ means ‘he’, and

(iii) *To denote an action that has started in the past, and is continuing up to the present moment:* បេន ទៅ ឯណា យូរ ហើយ មិនទាន់ មកផ្ទះ វិញ [ឈឺ+2] ឯង ឯង ឯង ។ He has not gone home for a long time. In this example, បេន means 'he', ឯណា យូរ means 'a long time', ហើយ means 'for', មិនទាន់ means 'home', and មកផ្ទះ វិញ means 'to go'. Such uses are more common in negative sentences, but can also be used in affirmative sentences. These sentences may also be translated to English as present perfect tense.

(iii) *To denote an action that took place in the past regularly:* ថ្ងៃចុងក្រោយ ខ្ញុំទៅផ្ទះ រាល់ ថ្ងៃ ឆ្នាំ។ Last month, I went home everyday. In this example, ថ្ងៃចុងក្រោយ means 'last', ខ្ញុំទៅផ្ទះ means 'month', រាល់ ថ្ងៃ means 'I', ឆ្នាំ ឆ្នាំ means 'everyday', ថ្ងៃចុងក្រោយ means 'home', and ឆ្នាំ means 'to go'. This example shows that the past indefinite tense form can be qualified using an adverb to indicate that the action was repeated in the past regularly. These sentences should also be translated to English as past indefinite tense.

(i) To denote an action that had taken place before another implied event took place: ᱦᱚᱴᱟ ᱵᱤᱨᱫᱟ ᱥᱚᱨᱠᱷᱚᱸᱰ । I had gone to the market (before I came here). In this example, ᱦᱚᱴᱟ means ‘I’, ᱵᱤᱨᱫᱟ means ‘market’, and ᱥᱚᱨᱠᱷᱚᱸᱰ means ‘to go’. This is typical use of this form in Santali like in most Indian languages. Without the implied event, it should actually be translated to English as past indefinite tense. Normally, however, these sentences may be translated to English as past perfect tense.

(i) To denote an action that expresses a command to be obeyed by the subject: $\exists U$ $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{D}\mathcal{O}Z$ $\mathcal{O}T\mathcal{G}H\mathcal{E}$ UZ | Stand here. In this example, $\exists U$ means ‘you’, $\mathcal{E}\mathcal{D}\mathcal{O}Z$ means

(ii) *To denote an action that expresses a wish or desire to be fulfilled by the subject:* ኃረገ ሮፆ'ወጊሬ [ሮፆ'ወጊ+ጊ] ሠገህኑፎ (ህ) ፡ I desire that he comes here. In this example, ኃረገ means 'he', ሮፆ'ወጊ means 'here', and ሠጊ'ኑ means 'to come'. Because there is an expression of wish or desire by the speaker, this implied part of the sentence in Santali needs to be added separately to the corresponding sentence in English. These sentences are normally translated to English as present indefinite tense again.

(iii) *To denote an action that expresses a request to be entertained by the subject:* ፀሀ ገፍ ገኑፀ.ፎገፍ [ገኑፀ.+ገፍ] (ህ) ፡ Please forgive me. In this example, ፀሀ means 'you'. ገፍ means 'I', and ገኑፀ. means 'to forgive'. What is expressed as a request or command depends on the kind of actions. Actions such as 'to forgive', 'to have mercy' etc. are normally interpreted as a request. These sentences are also translated to English as present indefinite tense.

(i) To denote an action that expresses a command to be obeyed by the subject, and the subject should continue performing the action or remain in the state resulting due to the completion of the action till some desired objective is achieved: ፀህ ረጎብረ ዐገጭ ኮይፍ ሲረ | Stand here (and remain in the standing position till some desired objective is achieved). In this example, ፀህ means ‘you’, ረጎብረ means ‘here’, and ዐገጭ means ‘to stand’. Here, the subject should remain in the standing position till some desired objective is achieved. These sentences are also translated to English as present indefinite tense in imperative mood.

(ii) To denote an action that expresses a wish or a desire to be fulfilled by the subject, and the subject should continue performing the action or remain in the state resulting due to the completion of the action till some desired objective is achieved: ካረገ ረጎብረ። [ረጎብረ+ጊ] ሠጋኑ ኮይፍ (ሲረ) | I desire that he comes here (and remain here till some desired objective is achieved). In this example, ካረገ means ‘he’, ረጎብረ means ‘here’, and ሠጋኑ means ‘to come’. Here , it is expected that the subject would remain at the destination place till some desired objective is achieved. These sentences should be translated to English as present indefinite tense together with the changes as required.

(iii) To denote an action that expresses a request to be entertained by the subject, and the subject should continue performing the action or remain in the state resulting due to the completion of the action till some desired objective is achieved: ፀህ ገዓ ጸኮፀ. ኮፀ,ዓ [ኮፀ+ገዓ] ሲረ | Please forgive me. In this example, ፀህ means ‘you’, ገዓ means ‘I’, and ጸኮፀ. means ‘to forgive’. Requests such as this are normally expressed in persistent forms, and non-persistent forms are slightly awkward even though we have given as example in the above for the sake of completeness. These sentences should also be translated to English as present indefinite tense in imperative mood.

(i) To denote an action about which the audience is informed that it is going to take place now before another action can take place, and there is an implicit request for approval from the audience: 𐤀𐤏𐤁𐤅𐤃 𐤁𐤏𐤁𐤅𐤃 𐤏𐤁𐤅𐤃 𐤚𐤕𐤅 𐤏𐤕𐤅 𐤂𐤕𐤅 𐤀. Let us go home first. In

4.3.4 Observations on the Tenses and the Uses of the Tenses

1. From a pragmatic point of view, an adverb of frequency moves back the initial instant of time when the action of a verb starts getting executed, and since then it is repeated till the instant of time when it is supposed to have executed without the adverb of frequency. This should explain why we have the above semantics for sentences with adverb of frequency.
2. From the above ten tenses, another four basic tenses, viz., **past repetitive tense, past persistent repetitive tense, past continuous tense, past persistent continuous tense** are obtained from present/future indefinite tense, future persistent indefinite tense, present continuous tense, present persistent continuous tense respectively, by replacing the terminator suffix finite Ø with terminator suffix OØŋZ'ŋ (or its equivalence). Another basic tense, viz., **past persistent indefinite tense**, is also used with transitive verbs in strong form. Besides, two basic forms of verb structures have been exclusively characterized as **present indefinite tense**. Three more future tenses, viz., **future indefinite tense, future continuous tense, and future perfect tense** which are formed in a slightly different manner from the general verb structure source, are also frequently used. *The verb structures of these nineteen tenses may be considered as the fundamental verb structures of Santali language.* It is to be noted that each tense has a number of verb structures for various types of verbs. The verb structures corresponding to the remaining tenses would be described in later sections.
3. The uses of the tenses for other kinds of verbs, viz., transitive verbs with different kinds of objects, and verbs with subject infix etc. are the same as those described above for intransitive verbs. Hence, the uses of the above ten tenses for other kinds of verbs would not be described later. But the uses of the remaining tenses would be described at an appropriate section later.
4. *From the observation on the uses of the above ten tenses, and the fact that there are nine more basic tenses, it is quite clear that the Santali language is sufficiently equipped to denote various kinds of timing-related semantics for the actions of the verbs that are required in a modern language.* But, of course, it has its own way of doing things, and persistent form of verb structure is one such example.
5. In practice, a Santali verb structure may be quite complex with components such as verb qualifiers, emphasizing infix, possessive infix, optional free emphasizer etc. getting into it. But these would not change the basic timing-related semantics of the above nineteen tenses in a significant way.
6. It is to be noted that, for intransitive verbs, four tenses, viz., present perfect tense, past indefinite tense, past perfect tense, and present informative tense, do not have their persistent counterpart. But for transitive verbs, past indefinite has its persistent counterpart, and the remaining three do not have.
7. *As noted earlier in part (C) above, there is no proper equivalence of perfect continuous tense forms of verb structures in Santali, but they may be simulated using aka form of verb structures to be described later. Also, it is to be noted that these forms are very*

	(ଏହାଠାରୁ ଦୂର ଯିବି)	[ବାହାରିବା+ଅ] । I fled away. Principal verb: ବାହାରିବା Auxiliary verb: ଦୂର ଯିବି	[ଘୁସିବା+ଅ] । I entered. Principal verb: ଘୁସିବା Auxiliary verb: ଦୂର ଯିବି
7.	Past perfect tense (ଏହାଠାରୁ ଦୂର ଯିବି) (ଦୂର ଯିବି ଥିବା ସମୟରେ)	ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା ପରେ [ବାହାରିବା+ଅ] । I had fled away (before another implied event). Principal verb: ବାହାରିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ	ବାହାରିବା ଘୁସିବା ପରେ [ଘୁସିବା+ଅ] । I had entered (before another implied event). Principal verb: ଘୁସିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ
8.	Present imperative tense (ଦୂର ଯିବି ଯାହା)	ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା ଯାହା [ବାହାରିବା+ଅ] । I order/advise myself to flee away. Principal verb: ବାହାରିବା Auxiliary verb: ଯାହା	ବାହାରିବା ଘୁସିବା ଯାହା [ଘୁସିବା+ଅ] । I order/advise myself to enter. Principal verb: ଘୁସିବା Auxiliary verb: ଯାହା
9.	Present persistent imperative tense (ଦୂର ଯିବି ଯାହା ଯାହା) (ଦୂର ଯିବି ଯାହା ଯାହା)	ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା ଯାହା [ବାହାରିବା+ଅ] । I order/advise myself to flee away (till I am far away from the current place). Principal verb: ବାହାରିବା Auxiliary verb: ବାହାରିବା ଯାହା	ବାହାରିବା ଘୁସିବା ବାହାରିବା ଯାହା [ଘୁସିବା+ଅ] । I order/advise myself to enter (till I am inside). Principal verb: ଘୁସିବା Auxiliary verb: ବାହାରିବା ଯାହା
10.	Present Informative tense (ଦୂର ଯିବି ଯାହା ଯାହା)	ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା ପରେ [ବାହାରିବା+ଅ] । Let me flee away. Principal verb: ବାହାରିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ	ବାହାରିବା ଘୁସିବା ପରେ [ଘୁସିବା+ଅ] । Let me enter. Principal verb: ଘୁସିବା Auxiliary verb: ପରେ

Table 4.6

It is also possible that certain intransitive verbs like ଘୁସିବା which roughly means ‘is available’ and ଘୁସିବା or ଘୁସିବା which roughly means ‘is not available’, and intransitive verbs which are obtained after adding a verb qualifier to main verbs can only be used in a few forms of the above ten tenses. Some of these verbs are later described in section 4.3.12, and 6.

4.3.6 Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs having Direct Inanimate Object

The forms of verb structures of transitive verbs having only direct inanimate object are the same as those for strong intransitive verbs. In the table 4.7 given below, we have shown the strong forms of verb structures of verb ଘୁସିବା together with strong forms verb structures of transitive verb ବାହାରିବା with direct inanimate object. From the table 4.7, it is clear that both forms are identical.

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ଘୁସିବା	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ବାହାରିବା with Direct Inanimate Object
1.	Present/future indefinite tense (ଏହାଠାରୁ ଦୂର ଯିବି-ଦୂର ଯିବି)	ବାହାରିବା ଘୁସିବା [ଘୁସିବା+ଅ] । I shall run. Principal verb: ଘୁସିବା Auxiliary verb: none	ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା [ବାହାରିବା+ଅ] । I shall drop a stone. Principal verb: ବାହାରିବା Auxiliary verb: none
2.	Future persistent	ବାହାରିବା ଘୁସିବା ବାହାରିବା-ଅ	ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା ବାହାରିବା-ଅ

	indefinite tense (ସଂପ୍ରସିଦ୍ଧାବସ୍ଥାରେ). ଫଳପ୍ରାପ୍ତି ହେଉଥିବାର ଅବସ୍ଥା)	[ହେଉ.ଆ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I shall continue to run (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ହେଉ.ଆ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଅ	ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଅ [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I shall continue to drop a stone (so that it reaches the ground, and remains there). Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଅ
3.	Present continuous tense (ପ୍ରତିପଦ ଚଳାଉଅଛି ଅବସ୍ଥା)	ଆମେ ଚାଲୁଛୁ.ଆସୁଛୁ ଅ [ହେଉ.ଆ+ଅସୁଛୁ+ଅ] । I am running. Principal verb: ହେଉ.ଆସୁଛୁ Auxiliary verb: ଅ	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁଛୁ.ଆସୁଛୁ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ଅସୁଛୁ+ଅ] । I am dropping a stone. Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ଅ
4.	Present persistent continuous tense (ସଂପ୍ରସିଦ୍ଧାବସ୍ଥାରେ). ପ୍ରତିପଦ ଚଳାଉଅଛି ଅବସ୍ଥା)	ଆମେ ଚାଲୁଛୁ.ଆ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ [ହେଉ.ଆ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I am continuing to run (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ହେଉ.ଆ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁଛୁ.ଆ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I am continuing to drop a stone (so that it reaches the ground and remains there). Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ
5.	Present perfect tense (ଅତୀତ ଚଳାଉଅଛି ଅବସ୍ଥା)	ଆମେ ଚାଲୁଛୁ.ଆ ଥିବେ [ହେଉ.ଆ+ଅସୁଛୁ+ଅ] । I have run. Principal verb: ହେଉ.ଆ Auxiliary verb: ଥିବେ	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁଛୁ.ଆ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ଅସୁଛୁ+ଅ] । I have dropped a stone. Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ଥିବେ
6.	Past indefinite tense (ଫଳପ୍ରାପ୍ତି ଅବସ୍ଥାରେ) ଅବସ୍ଥା)	ଆମେ ଚାଲୁଛୁ.ଆ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ [ହେଉ.ଆ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I ran. Principal verb: ହେଉ.ଆ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁଛୁ.ଆ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I dropped a stone. Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ
7.	Past persistent indefinite tense (ସଂପ୍ରସିଦ୍ଧାବସ୍ଥାରେ). ଫଳପ୍ରାପ୍ତି ଅବସ୍ଥାରେ) ଅବସ୍ଥା)	Not Applicable	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁଛୁ.ଆ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I continued to drop a stone (so that it reached the ground and remained there). Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ
8.	Past perfect tense (ଅତୀତ ଚଳାଉଅଛି ଅବସ୍ଥାରେ) ଅବସ୍ଥା)	ଆମେ ଚାଲୁଛୁ.ଆ ପଞ୍ଚିବେ [ହେଉ.ଆ+ପଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I had run (before another implied event). Principal verb: ହେଉ.ଆ Auxiliary verb: ପଞ୍ଚିବେ	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁଛୁ.ଆ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ପଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଅ] । I had dropped a stone (before another implied event). Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ପଞ୍ଚିବେ
9.	Present imperative tense (ପ୍ରତିପଦ ଚଳାଉଅଛି ଅବସ୍ଥାରେ) ଅବସ୍ଥା)	ଆମେ ଚାଲୁ.ଆ ଘାଟୁ [ହେଉ.ଆ+ଘାଟୁ] । I order/advise myself to run. Principal verb: ହେଉ.ଆ Auxiliary verb: ଘାଟୁ	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁ.ଆ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ଘାଟୁ] । I order/advise myself to drop a stone. Principal verb: ଘଣ୍ଟା Auxiliary verb: ଘାଟୁ
10.	Present persistent imperative tense (ସଂପ୍ରସିଦ୍ଧାବସ୍ଥାରେ). ପ୍ରତିପଦ ଚଳାଉଅଛି ଅବସ୍ଥାରେ) ଅବସ୍ଥା)	ଆମେ ଚାଲୁ.ଆ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ଘାଟୁ [ହେଉ.ଆ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଘାଟୁ] । I order/advise myself to run (till some desired objective is	ଆମେ ଘାଟୁ.ଆ ଘଣ୍ଟା [ଘଣ୍ଟା+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଘାଟୁ] । I order/advise myself to drop a stone (so that it reaches the ground and

	ଫଳିତ)	achieved). Principal verb: ହୁଅ.ଅ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ଲାଏ	remains there). Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧି Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ଲାଏ
11.	Present Informative tense (ଘଟଣାବଳୀର ବର୍ତ୍ତମାନ ଫଳିତ)	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ହୁଅ.ଅ ପଞ୍ଚେ ଗଞ୍ଜେ [ହୁଅ.ଅ+ପଞ୍ଚେ+ଗଞ୍ଜେ] । Let me run. Principal verb: ହୁଅ.ଅ Auxiliary verb: ପଞ୍ଚେ ଗଞ୍ଜେ	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧି ପଞ୍ଚେ ଗଞ୍ଜେ [ବାନ୍ଧି+ପଞ୍ଚେ+ଗଞ୍ଜେ] । Let me drop a stone. Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧି Auxiliary verb: ପଞ୍ଚେ ଗଞ୍ଜେ

Table 4.7

The verb ବାନ୍ଧି in weak form is always intransitive. For the sake of comparison, both the weak and the strong forms of verb structures of verb ବାନ୍ଧି are given in table 4.8 below.

	Tense of the Forms	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ବାନ୍ଧି	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ବାନ୍ଧି with Direct Inanimate Object
1.	Present/future indefinite tense (ସାଧାରଣ ବର୍ତ୍ତମାନ-ବିନିର୍ଦ୍ଧିତ ଫଳିତ)	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ] । I shall fall. Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ଥି	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ] । I shall drop a stone. Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: none
2.	Future persistent indefinite tense (ସାଧାରଣ ବର୍ତ୍ତମାନ-ବିନିର୍ଦ୍ଧିତ ଫଳିତ)	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଥି] । I shall continue to fall (so that I am in the ground and will remain there). Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଥି] । I shall continue to drop a stone (so that it reaches the ground and remains there). Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି
3.	Present continuous tense (ସାଧାରଣ ବର୍ତ୍ତମାନ-ବିନିର୍ଦ୍ଧିତ ଫଳିତ)	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଥି] । I am falling. Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଥି] । I am dropping a stone. Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ଥି
4.	Present persistent continuous tense (ସାଧାରଣ ବର୍ତ୍ତମାନ-ବିନିର୍ଦ୍ଧିତ ଫଳିତ)	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଥି] । I am continuing to fall (so that I am in the ground and will remain there). Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ବଞ୍ଚିବେ+ଥି] । I am continuing to drop a stone (so that it reaches the ground and remains there). Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚିବେ ବଞ୍ଚିବେ-ଥି
5.	Present perfect tense (ସାଧାରଣ ବର୍ତ୍ତମାନ-ବିନିର୍ଦ୍ଧିତ ଫଳିତ)	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ଥିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ+ଥି] । I have fallen. Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ଥିବେ-ଥି	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ଥିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ+ଥି] । I have dropped a stone. Principal verb: ବାନ୍ଧିବେ Auxiliary verb: ଥିବେ-ଥି
6.	Past indefinite tense (ସାଧାରଣ ବର୍ତ୍ତମାନ-ବିନିର୍ଦ୍ଧିତ ଫଳିତ)	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ଥିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ+ଥି] । I fell.	ମୁଁ-କାହିଁକି ବାନ୍ଧିବେ ଥିବେ-ଥି [ବାନ୍ଧି+ଥି+ବେ+ଥି] । I dropped a stone.

10.	ଘଟଣା ଘଟଣା ଘଟଣା ଘଟଣା । A letter is being given.	Transitive with passive voice semantics
	As shown in example 8 above, since the modified form ଘଟଣା of verb ଘଟ is not transitive with passive voice semantics in all the tenses of weak form in which it is used, another form of verb ଘଟ, viz., ଘଟଣା is used in these tenses so that it is transitive with passive voice semantics. This is the case with all the verbs where two forms of the verbs have been given in column 2 of appendix A3. It is to be noted in appendix A3 that there are not many verbs of this kind.	
11.	ଘଟଣା ଘଟଣା ଘଟଣା । A book was brought.	Transitive with passive voice semantics
	In this sentence, ଘଟଣା means 'one', ଘଟଣା means 'book', and ଘଟଣା means 'to bring'. The verb ଘଟଣା in weak form does not make any sense with animate subject, and therefore, there is no question of its meaning being reflexive in weak form. With inanimate subject, the verb ଘଟଣା in weak form is always transitive with passive voice semantics.	

Table 4.9

4.3.8 Observations on the Semantics of Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs with Direct Inanimate Object and Translation of Simple Sentences Using them into English

The following table gives a summary of the semantics of weak forms of verb structures of transitive verbs with direct inanimate object.

	Semantics of the Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs with Animate Subject	Semantics of the Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs with Inanimate Subject
1.	Intransitive	Intransitive
2.	Intransitive/Reflexive	Intransitive
3.	Pseudo-transitive/Reflexive	Pseudo-transitive
4.	Intransitive/Transitive with active voice semantics	NIL
5.	NIL	Transitive with passive voice semantics

Table 4.10

From the table 4.9 and 4.10, the following useful observations can be made on the semantics of weak forms of verb structures of transitive verbs with direct inanimate object, and this would greatly help to figure out which sentences in Santali can be translated to English as passive voice. These observations are also useful while translating an English sentence in passive voice to Santali.

1. Certain transitive verbs cannot be used in weak form of verb structure, e.g., verb ଘଟଣା. Other examples may be found in appendix A3.
2. A transitive verb in weak form of verb structure may have only intransitive semantics for both animate and inanimate subject (example 1 & 2 in table 4.9). There are a good number of transitive verbs of this kind in Santali, and hence, it shows that the weak forms of verb structures of transitive verbs in Santali cannot be equated with passive voice.
3. A transitive verb in weak form of verb structure may have intransitive/reflexive semantics for animate subject, but it will have only intransitive semantics for inanimate

- subject(example 3 & 4 in table 4.9). There are quite a few transitive verbs in Santali which have this semantics when used in weak form.
4. A transitive verb in weak form of verb structure may have pseudo-transitive/reflexive semantics for animate subject, but it will have only pseudo-transitive semantics for inanimate subject(example 5 & 6 in table 4.9). There are a large number of transitive verbs in Santali which belong to this category. Important thing to note here is that when these verbs are used in weak form of verb structure, they certainly cannot be considered as transitive with passive voice semantics, since there is a lot of difference in meaning between example 6 & 7 in table 4.9.
 5. A transitive verb in weak form of verb structure may be either intransitive or transitive with active voice semantics for some of the tenses as given in example 8 in table 4.9. For other tenses, it would be transitive with passive voice semantics(example 9 in table 4.9). For the tenses in which it is either intransitive or transitive with active voice semantics, there is another form of the same verb that would make it transitive with passive voice semantics in these tenses(example 10 in table 4.9). As noted earlier, there are only a few verbs in Santali that belong to this category.
 6. A transitive verb in weak form of verb structure may be used with inanimate subject only and it would be always transitive with passive voice semantics(example 11 in table 4.9). There are certainly a good number of transitive verbs in Santali that belong to this category, but most of the transitive verbs in Santali belong to category 3 given in table 4.10.
 7. From table 4.9 and 4.10, it is observed that with inanimate subject, a transitive verb in weak form of verb structure can have only intransitive, pseudo-transitive or transitive with passive voice semantics.
 8. *It is to be noted that the weak form of verb structure of a transitive verb can be interpreted as being transitive with passive voice semantics provided the verb in weak form has this semantics. The other option for a transitive verb to have passive voice semantics is to use the strong form of verb structure with syntax as given in example 7 of table 4.9. Note that this option is always available for all transitive verbs to make them have passive voice semantics, and for transitive verbs with animate subject, this is the only option available to make them have passive voice semantics.*

4.3.9 Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verbs having Direct Animate Object

If a transitive verb has a direct animate object, then it also appears as object infix in the verb structure after the verbal suffix(if any), and before any infix of any other type. Therefore, the verb structure of transitive verbs with direct animate object will depend not only on the tense of the verb structure but also on the object infix. Other than this change, the semantics of these verb structures for each of the tenses would remain the same, and the description of uses of the tenses in section 4.3.1 applies to these verb structures as well. The form of object infix for each of the pronoun or noun is the same as that for the corresponding bound emphazier of the pronoun or noun. The rules for merging of the object infix with the preceding and the following word are similar to those for the bound emphaziers, but they would be given later. In the table 4.11 given below, we have given the strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱞᱟ (which means 'to drop') with direct animate object ᱥᱟᱱ (which means 'you') together with the strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱞᱟ with direct inanimate object. The table clearly shows the strong correlation between these two forms of verb structures.

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb
--	--------------------	--	--

		Qbñ with Direct Animate Object ଅଢ଼	Qbñ with Direct Inanimate Object
1.	Present/future indefinite tense (ଏବଂବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି-ହୁଅନ୍ତୁଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I shall drop you. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I shall drop a stone. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: none
2.	Future persistent indefinite tense (ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ବନ୍ଦି+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I shall continue to drop you (till you are in the ground). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ବନ୍ଦି+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I shall continue to drop a stone (till it reaches the ground and remains there). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି
3.	Present continuous tense (ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I am dropping you. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I am dropping a stone. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି
4.	Present persistent continuous tense (ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ବନ୍ଦି+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I am continuing to drop you (till you are in the ground). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ବନ୍ଦି+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I am continuing to drop a stone (till it reaches the ground and remains there). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି
5.	Present perfect tense (ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I have dropped you. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I have dropped a stone. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି
6.	Past indefinite tense (ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I dropped you. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I dropped a stone. Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି
7.	Past persistent indefinite tense (ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍ ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ବନ୍ଦି+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I continued to drop you (till you were in the ground). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ବନ୍ଦି+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I continued to drop a stone (till it reached the ground and remained there). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି
8.	Past perfect tense (ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଠାଉଛି ଉଚ୍ଚିତ୍)	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I had dropped you (before another implied event). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି [Qbñ+ଉଠାଉଛି] । I had dropped a stone (before another implied event). Principal verb: ଗବନ୍ଦି Auxiliary verb: ଉଠାଉଛି
9.	Present imperative	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି	ଶୁଭାଶୁଭା ଗବନ୍ଦି ଉଠାଉଛି

Table 4.11

	ଫୁଲିତ)		Auxiliary verb: none
2.	Future persistent indefinite tense (ନିରନ୍ତରାବସ୍ଥାରେ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳି ବଢ଼ାଉଛି [ଗଳି+ବଢ଼ି+ଉ+ଉ] । I shall drop you (so that you are in the ground). Principal verb: ଗଳି Auxiliary verb: ବଢ଼ାଉଛି	Not applicable
3.	Present continuous tense (ପ୍ରତିପକ୍ଷ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I am dropping you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଗଳିରେ ବଢ଼ାଉଛି [ଗଳି+ବଢ଼ି+ଉ+ଉ] । I am dropping a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ବଢ଼ାଉଛି
4.	Present persistent continuous tense (ନିରନ୍ତରାବସ୍ଥାରେ ପ୍ରତିପକ୍ଷ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ବଢ଼ାଉଛି [ଗଳି+ବଢ଼ି+ଉ+ଉ] । I am dropping you (so that you are in the ground). Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ବଢ଼ାଉଛି	Not applicable
5.	Present perfect tense (ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I have dropped you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I have dropped a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ
6.	Past indefinite tense (ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I dropped you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I dropped a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ
7.	Past persistent indefinite tense (ନିରନ୍ତରାବସ୍ଥାରେ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I dropped you (so that you are in the ground). Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ	Not applicable
8.	Past perfect tense (ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I had dropped you (before another implied event). Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ	Not applicable
9.	Present imperative tense (ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ) ଫୁଲିତ)	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I order/advise myself to drop you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଫୁଲିତ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I order/advise myself to drop a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗଳିରେ Auxiliary verb: ଫୁଲିତ
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	ମୁଁ ତୁମ୍ଭକୁ ଗଳିରେ ଫୁଲିତ [ଗଳି+ଫୁଲି+ଉ+ଉ] । I	

	(ଇକିପିପିଗିଗି. ଠିକିକିକିକି ଉକିକିକି ଋକିକି)	order/advise myself to drop you (so that you are in the ground). Principal verb: ଗିକି Auxiliary verb: ଇକିକି ଉକି	Not applicable
11.	Present Informative tense (ଠିକିକିକିକି ଉକିକିକି ଋକିକି)	ମିକି କିକିକି ଗିକି ପିକି ଉକି [ଗିକି+ପିକି+କିକି+ଋକି] । Let me drop you. Principal verb: ଗିକି Auxiliary verb: ପିକି ଉକି	Not applicable

Table 4.12

In the example, given in table 4.12 above, for forms of verb structures of transitive verbs with indirect animate object, there is also a direct inanimate object, viz., ଧାତୁକିକି ଉକିକିକି, which means ‘a stone’ in this case. As it has been stated earlier that, in Santali, this direct inanimate object is not required to be present if the semantics of the verb does not require it, and the forms of verb structures of transitive verbs (with indirect animate object) without direct inanimate object are the same as those of transitive verbs (with indirect animate object) with direct inanimate object. The forms of verb structures of transitive verbs for these two cases are shown in table 4.13 given below, and it is clear from the table that these two forms are identical.

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ପିକିକି with Indirect Animate Object କିକି	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଗିକି with Indirect Animate Object କିକି
1.	Present/future indefinite tense(ଋକିକିକି ଋକିକିକି-ଋକିକିକି ଋକିକି)	ମିକି କିକିକି ପିକିକିକିକିକିକି [ପିକିକି+ଋକିକି+କିକି+ଋକିକି] । I shall laugh at you. Principal verb: ପିକିକିକିକିକିକି Auxiliary verb: none	ମିକି କିକି ଧାତୁକିକି ଉକିକିକିକି ଗିକିକିକିକି [ଗିକି+କିକି+କିକି+ଋକିକି] । I shall drop a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗିକିକିକିକି Auxiliary verb: none
2.	Present continuous tense (ଋକିକିକି ଉକିକିକି ଋକିକି)	ମିକି କିକିକି ପିକିକିକିକିକିକି ଇକିକି [ପିକିକି+ଋକିକି+କିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି] । I am laughing at you. Principal verb: ପିକିକିକିକିକି Auxiliary verb: ଇକିକି	ମିକି କିକି ଧାତୁକିକି ଉକିକିକିକି ଗିକିକିକି ଇକିକି [ଗିକି+କିକି+କିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି] । I am dropping a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗିକିକିକି Auxiliary verb: ଇକିକି
3.	Present perfect tense (ଋକିକିକି ଉକିକିକି ଋକିକି)	ମିକି କିକିକି ପିକିକିକି କିକିକିକିକି [ପିକିକି+କିକିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି] । I have laughed at you. Principal verb: ପିକିକିକି Auxiliary verb: କିକିକିକିକି ଉକିକି	ମିକି କିକି ଧାତୁକିକି ଉକିକିକିକି ଗିକିକି କିକିକିକିକି [ଗିକି+କିକିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି] । I have dropped a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗିକି Auxiliary verb: କିକିକିକିକି ଉକିକି
4.	Past indefinite tense (ଋକିକିକି ଉକିକିକି ଋକିକି)	ମିକି କିକିକି ପିକିକିକିକିକି ଉକିକି [ପିକିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି] । I laughed at you. Principal verb: ପିକିକିକିକିକି Auxiliary verb: ଉକିକି	ମିକି କିକି ଧାତୁକିକି ଉକିକିକିକି ଗିକିକିକି ଉକିକି [ଗିକି+କିକି+ଋକିକି+ଋକିକି] । I dropped a stone on you. Principal verb: ଗିକିକିକି Auxiliary verb: ଉକିକି
5.	Present imperative tense	ମିକି କିକିକି ପିକିକିକିକିକି ଉକି [ପିକିକି+ଋକିକି+କିକି+ଋକିକି] । I	ମିକି କିକି ଧାତୁକିକି ଉକିକିକିକି ଗିକିକିକି ଉକି

Table 4.13

(ଠଉଁଉଁଠାଁ ଉଠାଉଁ ଉଠାଉଁ)	order/advise myself to laugh at you. Principal verb: ଠଉଁ'ଠଉଁଠାଉଁ Auxiliary verb: ଠାଉଁ	[ଠଉଁ'ଠଉଁ+ଠାଉଁ+ଠାଉଁ] । I order/advise myself to laugh at your funny action. Principal verb: ଠଉଁ'ଠଉଁଠାଉଁ Auxiliary verb: ଠାଉଁ
---------------------------	--	---

Table 4.14

Whenever a verbal suffix such as ଠାଉଁ/ଠାଉଁ, ଠାଉଁ/ଠାଉଁ, ଠାଉଁ/ଠାଉଁ is appended to a verb such as ଠଉଁ'ଠଉଁ which ends with ଠାଉଁ, the latter version of the verbal suffix that begins with ଠାଉଁ is used in these cases. Examples of other verbs which can be used as transitive verb with indirect object are given in appendix A4.

Strong forms of verb structures for indirect inanimate objects and different indirect animate objects are given in appendix C36-47 for various tenses. For the same object, we have given two forms. In the first form, bound emphazier is not a part of the verb structure, but in the second form, it is made part of the verb structure. There are eleven types of animate objects and eleven types of animate subjects. Hence, there should be 121 tables for each possible combination of animate subject and object. But, for the sake of illustration, we have given only one table for each type of animate object pairing it with an animate subject of our choice. Other tables can be derived in the same way.

4.3.12 Forms of Verb Structures having Animate Subject Infix

There is a class of verb structures in which there is a subject infix at the same position in the verb structure at which the object infix is placed. *If the subject infix is present in the verb structure, then there is no bound emphazier corresponding to the subject.* Also, there is no object infix even if the verb has an animate object. In the following, we give examples of verb structures which have subject infix in them. The form of subject infix for each of the pronoun or noun is the same as that for the corresponding bound emphazier of the pronoun or noun. In the table 4.15 shown below, the forms of verb structures with animate subject infix are the same as those of transitive verbs with direct animate object, but corresponding to persistent forms, there is no valid form of verb structure for verb structures with animate subject infix. Hence, for the sake of comparison, we have given both forms side by side. *However, the forms of verb structures with animate subject infix are the same as those of transitive verbs with corresponding direct or indirect animate object as illustrated subsequently in this section. Hence, no separate table is given for these forms of verb structures for each type of subject in the appendix C.* These forms of verb structures are illustrated in the tables 4.15, 4.16, 4.18 and 4.19 given below. The rules for merging of the subject infix with the preceding and the following word are similar to those for the object infix and bound emphaziers, but they would be dealt with later. In the table 4.15 given below, ଉଠାଉଁ means 'to find something to be tasty', when it is used as a verb.

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଠାଉଁ with Direct Animate Object ଠାଉଁ	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଠାଉଁ with Subject Infix for Animate Subject ଠାଉଁ
1.	Present/future indefinite tense(ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ-ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ)	ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ [ଠାଉଁ+ଠାଉଁ+ଠାଉଁ] । I shall drop you. Principal verb: ଠାଉଁ Auxiliary verb: ଠାଉଁ	ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ ଠାଉଁ [ଠାଉଁ+ଠାଉଁ+ଠାଉଁ+ଠାଉଁ] । You will find this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: ଠାଉଁ Auxiliary verb: ଠାଉଁ

2.	Future persistent indefinite tense (ঐশিঐশিঐশিঐশি. ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I shall drop you (so that you are in the ground). Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি	Not applicable
3.	Present continuous tense (ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I am dropping you. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । You are finding this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি
4.	Present persistent continuous tense (ঐশিঐশিঐশিঐশি. ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I am dropping you (so that you are in the ground). Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি	Not applicable
5.	Present perfect tense (ঐশি.ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I have dropped you. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । You have found this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি
6.	Past indefinite tense (ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I dropped you. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । You found this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি
7.	Past persistent indefinite tense (ঐশিঐশিঐশিঐশি. ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I dropped you (so that you are in the ground). Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি	Not applicable
8.	Past perfect tense (ঐশি.ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I had dropped you (before another implied event). Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । You had found this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি
9.	Present imperative tense (ঐশিঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি)	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I order/advise myself to drop you. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । You must find this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: ঐশিঐশি Auxiliary verb: ঐশিঐশি
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	ঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি ঐশিঐশি [ঐশিঐশি+ঐশি+ঐশিঐশি] । I	

			Auxiliary verb: $\text{b}2\text{q}$ $\text{u}2\text{g}$
5.	Past perfect tense ($\text{u}2\text{h}.\text{o}2\text{c}$ $\text{z}2\text{h}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$)	$\text{h}2\text{u}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{p}2\text{q}$ $\text{u}2\text{g}$ [$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}+\text{p}2\text{q}+\text{u}2\text{h}$] : You had felt cold (before another implied event). Principal verb: $\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ Auxiliary verb: $\text{p}2\text{q}$ $\text{u}2\text{g}$	$\text{h}2\text{u}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{u}2\text{h}$ $\text{u}2\text{g}$ $\text{p}2\text{q}$ $\text{u}2\text{g}$ [$\text{u}2\text{g}2\text{h}2\text{h}+\text{p}2\text{q}+\text{u}2\text{h}$] : You had found this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: $\text{u}2\text{g}$ Auxiliary verb: $\text{p}2\text{q}$ $\text{u}2\text{g}$
6.	Present imperative tense ($\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$)	$\text{h}2\text{u}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{u}2\text{h}$ [$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}+\text{u}2\text{h}$] : You must feel cold. Principal verb: $\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ Auxiliary verb: $\text{u}2\text{h}$	$\text{h}2\text{u}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{u}2\text{h}$ $\text{u}2\text{h}$ [$\text{u}2\text{g}2\text{h}2\text{h}+\text{u}2\text{h}$] : You must find this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: $\text{u}2\text{g}$ Auxiliary verb: $\text{u}2\text{h}$
7.	Present Informative tense ($\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$)	$\text{h}2\text{u}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{p}2\text{u}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$ [$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}+\text{p}2\text{h}+\text{u}2\text{h}+\text{c}2\text{h}$] : Please feel cold. Principal verb: $\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$ Auxiliary verb: $\text{p}2\text{u}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$	$\text{h}2\text{u}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{h}2\text{h}$ $\text{p}2\text{u}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$ [$\text{u}2\text{g}2\text{h}2\text{h}+\text{p}2\text{h}+\text{u}2\text{h}+\text{c}2\text{h}$] : Please find this vegetable dish to be tasty. Principal verb: $\text{u}2\text{g}$ Auxiliary verb: $\text{p}2\text{u}$ $\text{c}2\text{h}$

Table 4.16

There are a few verbs in this category which need subject infix in their verb structure for animate subject. These verbs are basically adjectives, and when they are used as verbs, they affect the animate subject substantially. It is also to be noted that these verbs may also be used as intransitive verbs in weak, strong or basic form. A partial list of these verbs together with their meaning is given in table 4.17 shown below.

	Name of the Verbs in Santali That May Have Subject Infix	Meaning of the Verbs in English
1.	$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel cold
2.	$\text{p}2\text{h}$	To feel hot
3.	$\text{u}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel sunny
4.	$\text{u}2\text{g}$	To find something tasty
5.	$\text{u}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To find something bitter
6.	$\text{o}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel thirsty
7.	$\text{u}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel sweet
8.	$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}.\text{u}$	To feel sweaty
9.	$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To find something sour
10.	$\text{u}2\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To find something bitter
11.	$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel hungry
12.	$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel chilly
13.	$\text{u}2\text{h}.\text{u}$	To feel pain
14.	$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel warm
15.	$\text{u}2\text{h}$	To smell
16.	$\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To feel itchy
17.	$\text{u}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To desire
18.	$\text{u}2\text{h}2\text{h}$	To be present/To be available
19.	$\text{h}2\text{h}.\text{u}$	To be absent/To be not available
20.	$\text{h}2\text{h}.\text{u}$	To be absent/To be not available

Table 4.18

In the table 4.15, 4.16, and 4.18, examples of verb structures with subject infix have been given to show that the forms of these verb structures are the same as those of a transitive verb with direct animate object. However, it is also possible that the forms of verb structures with subject infix are the same as those of a transitive verb with indirect animate object. This is specially possible for a few tenses such as present/future indefinite tense and present continuous tense if the main verb is a compound one or the principal verb has verb qualifiers. In the table 4.19 shown below, examples of verb structures with subject infix whose forms are the same as those of a transitive verb with indirect animate object are given for illustration. It is to be noted that the forms of verb structures with subject infix in the table 4.19 are possible only for present/future indefinite tense and present continuous tense.

	continuous tense (ଏହିବନ୍ଧୁ ଚାଉଳର ଚିକିଟ/ଘୋଷଣା ଚାଉଳର ଚିକିଟ)	[୧୮୩୪+ବନ୍ଧୁ+ଅ] । This vegetable dish is tasty(At present, we are tasting, and it is found to be tasty). Principal verb: ୧୮୩୪ Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଧୁ	ବନ୍ଧୁ [୧୮୩୪+ଅଂଶ+ବନ୍ଧୁ+ଅ] । This vegetable dish is becoming tasty. Principal verb: ୧୮୩୪ Auxiliary verb: ବନ୍ଧୁ
3.	Past indefinite tense (ଏହିବନ୍ଧୁ ଗତକାଳର ଚିକିଟ)	ଗତକାଳର ଏହି ଚାଉଳ ଚିକିଟ ବନ୍ଧୁ [୧୮୩୪+ଅଂଶ+ଅ] । This vegetable dish was tasty(We tasted it earlier, and it was found to be tasty). Principal verb: ୧୮୩୪ Auxiliary verb: ଅଂଶ ବନ୍ଧୁ	ଗତକାଳର ଏହି ଚାଉଳ ଗତକାଳର [୧୮୩୪+ଗତକାଳର] । This vegetable dish became tasty. Principal verb: ୧୮୩୪ Auxiliary verb: ଗତକାଳର

Table 4.21

The basic form of verb structures can support only a few tenses as exemplified above; whereas the weak form of verb structures can support a lot many tenses. Besides the forms of verb structures described in section 4.1, there are a few other verb structures which also do not have any corresponding strong counterpart. However, these verb structures are essentially derivatives of weak forms of verb structures, and therefore, we consider them as **weak form of verb structures without any strong counterpart**. These verb structures are illustrated in the table 4.22 given below.

	Tense of the Forms	Examples of Weak Forms of Verb Structures with no Strong Counterpart
1.	Past indefinite tense (උභය්‍යාස ධරණය එකිනි)	<p>ඒක (උග්‍රහ්‍රය) උග්‍රයෙහි, ආ නිමැන නිමිනි [නිමැන+නිමිනි] I took away a prize for myself.</p> <p>Principal verb: නිමැන</p> <p>Auxiliary verb: නිමිනි</p> <p>Here, the verbal suffix නිමිනි is a derivative of the verbal suffix ධරණය which is used for past indefinite tense in weak form of verb structures.</p>
2.	Present perfect tense (උභය්‍යාස ධරණය එකිනි)	<p>ඒක (උග්‍රහ්‍රය) උග්‍රයෙහි, ආ නිමැන නිමිනිනිමිනි [නිමැන+නිමිනිනිමිනිනිමිනි] I have taken away a prize for myself.</p> <p>Principal verb: නිමැන</p> <p>Auxiliary verb: නිමිනිනිමිනිනිමිනි</p> <p>Here, the verbal suffix නිමිනිනිමිනිනිමිනි is a derivative of the verbal suffix නිමිනි which is used for present perfect tense in weak form of verb structures.</p>
3.	Present imperative tense (උභය්‍යාස ධරණය එකිනි)	<p>හිමිනි ආනිනි නිමිනිනිමිනි [ආනිනි+නිමිනිනිමිනි] Let him come.</p> <p>Principal verb: ආනිනි</p> <p>Auxiliary verb: none</p> <p>In this example, හිමිනි means 'he', and ආනිනි means 'to come'. Here, නිමිනි is the verb qualifier, and නිමිනි is the same verbal suffix that is used in example 1 above. <i>This is a rare example where there is no terminator suffix.</i> Probably, the terminator suffix (ආනි) has been lost over a period of time. It is to be noted that (ආනි) is also getting deleted in the examples given in the rightmost column of table 4.5.</p>
4.	Present imperative tense (උභය්‍යාස ධරණය එකිනි)	<p>හිමිනි (උග්‍රහ්‍රය) උග්‍රයෙහි, හිමි නිමැන නිමිනිනිමිනි [නිමැන+නිමිනිනිමිනිනිමිනි] Let them take away a prize.</p> <p>Principal verb: නිමැන</p> <p>Auxiliary verb: නිමිනිනිමිනිනිමිනි</p>

୧୭୩)	Auxiliary verb: none
------	----------------------

Table 4.22

4.3.15 Classification and Use of Base Forms of Verbs

The main verb of base component of a verb structure is a sequence of one or more verbs in base form. A verb in base form is essentially a single word verb that has not been modified by merging a verbal suffix or terminator suffix finite ୭ with it. There are essentially two kinds of base forms of verbs, viz., *root form*, and *mutated form*. A verb in base form is said to be in **root form** if it has not been modified in any way, e.g., ୭୭୭ which means ‘to beat’, ୧୨୧୧୧ which means ‘to recognize’, and so on. Normally, it is the transitive verbs which gets mutated. The *mutated form* of a verb in root form is obtained by mutating the verb internally in one of the following ways.

1. By inserting a suitable infix in the middle of the verb.
2. By adding a suffix ୭୧(or its equivalence ୭୧/୩୧/୧୧/୨୧ as appropriate) to the beginning part of the verb.
3. By adding a prefix to the verb that is obtained from the beginning part of the verb itself.

We shall refer to the first kind of modification undergone by a verb as *reciprocal mutation*, and the resulting form of verb as the **reciprocal form of verb**, since the semantics of reciprocity gets incorporated into the verb mutated in this way. Furthermore, we shall refer to the second or third kind of modification undergone by a verb as *action-centric mutation*, and the resulting form of verb as the **action-centric form of verb**, since, in this case, the focus is on performing the action of the verb rather than on the object on which the action is to be performed. Some examples of reciprocal form of verbs are ୭୭୭୭୭ which means ‘to beat each other’ and is derived from ୭୭୭, ୧୧-୨୧୧ which means ‘to recognize each other’, and is derived from ୧୨୧୧୧, and so on. A reciprocal form of verb can be used with dual or plural number subject only. There are several restrictions on the use of action-centric form of verbs, and a salient features of them are as given below.

1. The object of an action-centric form of verb is generally not specified. Also, the object of such verbs may or may not be implied or implied somewhat vaguely.
2. The action-centric form of verbs may be used in a few tenses of weak form of verb structure only, viz., **present/future indefinite tense, past repetitive tense, present continuous tense, and past continuous tense**.
3. The mutation 2 and 3 above result in two different action-centric forms of verbs, but they differ in their meaning only slightly. The emphasis on the action is somewhat stronger in the verb obtained by mutation 2 than that obtained by mutation 3 above. Also, mutation 2 can be applied to most verbs in root form, but mutation 3 can be applied only to some verbs in root form that begin with a consonant.
4. It is also possible to apply mutation 2 to the last word of the main verb of a verb structure, and the resulting form of principal verb would have the same semantics as that of action-centric form of verb in base form.
5. If an action-centric form of verb is part of a main verb, then the main verb cannot be followed with any verb qualifiers.
6. In some sense, the action-centric form of verb is similar to ‘present participle’ form of verb in English which has been used as gerund.

In the following , we give examples of reciprocal forms of verbs in table 4.23, and action-centric forms of verbs in table 4.24.

	Root Form of Verbs	Reciprocal Form of Verbs	Examples to Illustrate the Use of Reciprocal Form of Verbs
1.	ହୁଅଁ (to beat)	ହୁଅଁହୁଅଁ (to beat each other)	ହୁଅଁହୁଅଁ ପକ୍ଷେ ହୁଅଁହୁଅଁ ଅବଧିଅବଧି । We have beaten each other. In the above example, ହୁଅଁହୁଅଁ means 'we'.
2.	ଠେକ୍ (to shoot with an arrow)	ଠେକ୍ଠେକ୍ (to shoot each other with arrow)	ହେବେକ୍ ବେକ୍ ଠେକ୍ଠେକ୍ଠେକ୍ ଅବଧି । They will shoot each other with arrow. In the above example, ହେବେକ୍ means 'they'.
3.	ଧାନ୍ତି (to touch)	ଧାନ୍ତିଧାନ୍ତି (to touch each other)	ଅ.ଘାନ୍ତି ଧାନ୍ତିଧାନ୍ତିଧାନ୍ତି ଘାନ୍ତି । Two of you touch each other. In the above example, ଅ.ଘାନ୍ତି means 'two of you'.
4.	ପଞ୍ଜି (to tell)	ପଞ୍ଜି.ପଞ୍ଜି. (to tell each other)	ହେବେକ୍ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି.ପଞ୍ଜି. ଅବଧିଅବଧି । Two of them have told each other. In the above example, ହେବେକ୍ means 'two of them'.
5.	ଧିନ୍ତି (to pull)	ଧିନ୍ତିଧିନ୍ତି (to pull each other)	ଘାନ୍ତିଧିନ୍ତି ଘାନ୍ତି.ଧିନ୍ତି ପଞ୍ଜି ଧିନ୍ତିଧିନ୍ତି ବଧିଅବଧି । Two monkeys are pulling each other. In the above example, ଘାନ୍ତିଧିନ୍ତି means 'two', and ଘାନ୍ତି.ଧିନ୍ତି means 'monkey'.

Table 4.23

From the table 4.23, it is to be noted that the verbs in root form are transitive, but the corresponding verbs in reciprocal form are intransitive. Also, the verbs in reciprocal form have been used in weak form of verb structures only. These observations are generally true of most verbs in reciprocal form. In the following , table 4.24 gives the examples of use of action-centric form of verbs.

	Root Form of Verbs	Action-centric Form of Verbs	Examples to Illustrate the Use of Action-centric Form of Verbs
1.	ହୁଅଁ (to beat)	ହୁଅଁ-ହୁଅଁ ହୁଅଁ~ହୁଅଁ	ହେବେକ୍ ହୁଅଁ-ହୁଅଁ । He will beat (us if we do some mischief or go near him or do something like that).
2.	ଠେକ୍ (to shoot with an arrow)	ଠେକ୍-ଠେକ୍ ଠେକ୍~ଠେକ୍	ହେବେକ୍ ଠେକ୍-ଠେକ୍ ବଧିଅବଧି ଠେକ୍ଠେକ୍ । He was shooting with an arrow (anyone including us for some unknown reason).
3.	ଧାନ୍ତି (to touch)	ଧାନ୍ତି-ଧାନ୍ତି	ହେବେକ୍ ଧାନ୍ତି-ଧାନ୍ତି ଠେକ୍ଠେକ୍ । He used to touch (us whenever we went near him).
4.	ପଞ୍ଜି (to tell)	ପଞ୍ଜି.ପଞ୍ଜି. ପଞ୍ଜି.~ପଞ୍ଜି.	ହେବେକ୍ ପଞ୍ଜି.ପଞ୍ଜି. ଅବଧିଅବଧି । He will tell (about us if he comes to know of our secret).
5.	ଧିନ୍ତି (to pull)	ଧିନ୍ତି-ଧିନ୍ତି	ହେବେକ୍ ଧିନ୍ତି-ଧିନ୍ତି ବଧିଅବଧି । He is pulling (us for some unknown).

Table 4.24

In the table 4.24, the implied semantics of any of these examples could be anything that is similar to what is given. Also, the action-centric form of the verb could be replaced with the alternate action-centric form of verb(if available) without much of a change in semantics.

There are many situations where a verb structure may be used without the terminator suffix. We term a simple sentence in which the verbal suffix has been removed as **truncated simple sentence**($\text{၀မ်ဃရပ်ဗ်ဒဲး ဘီ.ဂေဘိ.၀}$), and the corresponding verb structure as **truncated verb structure**($\text{၀မ်ဃရပ်ဗ်ဒဲး ဝဲဘိဇဝဲဘိ လဲဘိဒဲဘိ}$). A **partially truncated simple sentence**($\text{ဘိမ္မုခိဘိ မ်ဃရပ်ဗ်ဒဲး ဘီ.ဂေဘိ.၀}$) is one in which only the terminator suffix has been removed. A **fully truncated simple sentence**($\text{ပွာသဲဘိ. မ်ဃရပ်ဗ်ဒဲး ဘီ.ဂေဘိ.၀}$) is one in which both the terminator suffix and the bound emphasizer have been removed. In a fully truncated simple sentence, even the verbal suffix may be removed, but in a partially truncated simple sentence, the verbal suffix has to be present if it is required. The truncated verb structures in various tenses may be used as adjectives. In the table 4.25 shown below, we have given examples of truncated verb structures in all the tenses in which they can be used as adjectives. Also, some of these truncated verb structures in strong form may not be usable in a simple sentence that is not truncated. In addition, in all these cases, the verbal suffix may merge with the base component of the verb structure, which otherwise would not have merged in a simple sentence that is not truncated.

[illegible]

		present/future indefinite tense	
6.	ଓଡ଼ିଆ (to run)	ଓଡ଼ିଆଓଡ଼ିଆ [ଓଡ଼ିଆ+ଓଡ଼ିଆ]	ଓଡ଼ିଆଓଡ଼ିଆ ନଈର ଓଡ଼ିଆ ନଈ ଉପରେ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ । Do not board a running train.
		Strong form of truncated verb structure with no object or with direct inanimate/animate object in present continuous tense	In the above example, ନଈର ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'train', ନଈ means 'in', ଉପରେ means 'not', and ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'to board'.
7.	ଓକ୍‌କ (to shoot with an arrow)	ଓକ୍‌କଓକ୍‌କ [ଓକ୍‌କ+ଓକ୍‌କ]	ଓକ୍‌କଓକ୍‌କ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ନଈର ଓଡ଼ିଆ । An arrow that has been shot will not return.
		Strong form of truncated verb structure with no object or with direct inanimate/animate object in present perfect tense	In the above example, ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'an arrow', ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'not', and ନଈର ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'to return'.
8.	ଓକ୍‌କ (To wash)	ଓକ୍‌କଓକ୍‌କ [ଓକ୍‌କ+ଓକ୍‌କ]	ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ନଈର ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ । In this hotel, even the washed plates are dirty.
		Strong form of truncated verb structure with indirect animate object in present/future indefinite tense	In the above example, ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'this', ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'hotel', ନଈ means 'in', ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'plate', and ଓଡ଼ିଆ~ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'dirty'.
9.	ଓଡ଼ିଆ (To smell)	ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ [ଓଡ଼ିଆ+ଓଡ଼ିଆ]	ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ । Please throw away the vegetable dish of dal that is smelling.
		Basic form of truncated verb structure in present indefinite tense	In the above example, ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'dal', ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'vegetable dish', and ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'to throw away'.
10.	ଓଡ଼ିଆ (To eat)	ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ [ଓଡ଼ିଆ+ଓଡ଼ିଆ]	ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ନଈର ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଓଡ଼ିଆ । There are no people to eat (considerable amount of food) in this house.
		Weak form of truncated verb structure in present/ future indefinite tense	In the above example, ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'this', ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'house', ନଈ means 'in', ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'people', and ଓଡ଼ିଆ means 'not present'. Note that truncated verb structures having a single action-centric form of verb are used as adjectives like any other root form of verb.

Table 4.25

4.3.17 Classification of Verbal Suffixes and Suffixed Forms of Verbs

There are several verbal suffixes which are used in different forms of verb structures for realizing varieties of tenses. A list of these verbal suffixes is given in section 3.3.1. There are essentially five kinds of verbal suffixes, viz., (i) verbal suffixes which are used in weak form of verb structures that have a corresponding strong counterpart, (ii) verbal suffixes which are used in strong forms of verb structures with no object or with direct inanimate/animate object, (iii) verbal suffixes which are used in strong forms of verb structures with indirect inanimate/animate object, (iv) verbal suffixes which are used in weak forms of verb structures having no strong counterpart, and (v) a special verbal suffix ଓଡ଼ିଆ that is used in aka form of verb structures. The verbal suffixes in section 3.3.1 are listed in the above order only, i.e., first the verbal suffixes of type (i), followed by those of type (ii), and so on. If there are no verb qualifiers between the main verb and

the verbal suffix, then the verbal suffix may merge with the last verb of the main verb, and the resulting verb is said to be in **suffix form**. The components of a main verb are verbs in base form, and therefore, the **suffix forms of verbs** are obtained from verbs in base form by merging a verbal suffix with them. In the table 4.26 given below, we give a description of where each of the verbal suffixes is used, when alternate forms of each verbal suffix are used, and when they merge with the last word of the base component. We have also given a name for each of the resulting suffixed form of verbs which we think is most appropriate for it.

	Verbal Suffixes	In which tenses they are used?	When are alternate forms used?	When do they merge with the last word of base component?	Name of the suffixed forms of verbs
Verbal suffixes for weak forms of verb structures having a corresponding strong counterpart					
1.	Main form: 𑒧𑒪 Alternate form: 𑒧𑒪/𑒪𑒪/𑒪𑒪/𑒪𑒪	Present/future Indefinite Tense, Future Indefinite Tense, Present Continuous Tense, Present Imperative Tense, Past Repetitive Tense, Past Continuous Tense	Last character is consonant or 𑒧: 𑒧𑒪 is used. Last character is any other character: The suffix depends on the last vowel. A few exceptions exist, and none of them may be used.	Always	Weak Present Form
2.	Main form: 𑒧𑒪𑒪 Alternate form: none	Future Persistent Indefinite Tense, Future Perfect Tense, Present Persistent Continuous Tense, Present Persistent Imperative Tense, Past Persistent Repetitive Tense, Past Persistent Continuous Tense	Never	Never	None
3.	Main form: 𑒧𑒪𑒪𑒪 Alternate form: none	Present Perfect Tense	Never	It generally merges with the last word of the base component, when it is part of a truncated verb structure that has been used as adjective.	Weak Present Perfect Form
4.	Main form: 𑒪𑒪 Alternate form: none	Past Indefinite Tense	Never	It generally merges with the last word of the base component, when it is part of a truncated verb	Weak Past Indefinite Form

				structure that has been used as adjective.	
5.	Main form: ꠘꠇꠇ Alternate form: none	Past Perfect Tense, Present Informative Tense	Never	Never	None
Verbal suffixes for strong forms of verb structures with no object or with direct inanimate/animate object					
6.	Main form: ꠇꠇ Alternate form: ꠇꠇ	ꠇꠇ: Present Continuous Tense ꠇꠇ: Present Continuous Tense, Past Continuous Tense	Alternate form is used when it is immediately followed by any component other than the terminator suffix finite ꠇ	Always	ꠇꠇ: Strong Present Continuous Form ꠇꠇ: Strong Past Continuous Form
7.	Main form: ꠇꠇꠇ Alternate form: ꠇꠇ	Future Persistent Indefinite Tense, Future Perfect Tense, Present Persistent Continuous Tense, Present Persistent Imperative Tense, Past Persistent Repetitive Tense, Past Persistent Continuous Tense	Alternate form ꠇꠇ is used when object/subject infix is present; otherwise, main form is used.	Never	None
8.	Main form: ꠇꠇꠇꠇ Alternate form: ꠇꠇꠇꠇ	Present Perfect Tense	Alternate form is used when it is immediately followed by any component other than the terminator suffix finite ꠇ	ꠇꠇꠇꠇ: It generally merges with the last word of the base component, when it is part of a truncated verb structure that has been used as adjective.	ꠇꠇꠇꠇ: Strong Present Perfect Form
9.	Main form: ꠇꠇꠇ Alternate form: ꠇꠇꠇ	Past Indefinite Tense	Alternate form is used when it is immediately followed by any component other than the terminator suffix finite ꠇ	Never	None
10.	Main form: ꠇꠇꠇ Alternate form: none	Past Persistent Indefinite Tense	Never	Never	None
11.	Main form: ꠘꠇꠇ Alternate form: ꠘꠇꠇ/ꠘꠇꠇ/ ꠘꠇꠇ	Past Perfect Tense	ꠘꠇꠇ: This form is sometimes used with a few verbs, but the main form can be used in its	Never	None

			place. ᱯᱟᱦᱟᱨ/ᱯᱟᱦᱟᱨ: These forms are used when it is immediately followed by any component other than the terminator suffix finite ʘ		
12.	Main form: ᱯᱟ Alternate form: none	Present Informative Tense	Never	Never	None
Verbal suffixes for strong forms of verb structures with indirect inanimate/animate object					
13.	Main form: ʘᱤ Alternate form: ʘ/ʘᱤᱤᱤ/ʘᱤ	Present/future Indefinite Tense, Present Continuous Tense, Present Imperative Tense	Alternate form ʘ/ʘᱤ is used when object/subject infix is present. Alternate form ʘᱤᱤᱤ/ʘᱤ is used when the last alphabet of the base component is ʘ	Always	ʘᱤᱤᱤ/ʘᱤᱤᱤ: Strong Present Form
14.	Main form: ʘᱤᱤᱤᱤᱤᱤ Alternate form: ʘᱤᱤᱤᱤᱤᱤ	Present Perfect Tense	Alternate form is used when it is immediately followed by any component other than the terminator suffix finite ʘ	Never	None
15.	Main form: ʘᱤ Alternate form: ʘᱤᱤᱤ	Past Indefinite Tense	Alternate form is used when the last alphabet of the base component is ʘ	Always	Strong Past Form
Verbal suffixes for weak forms of verb structures having no strong counterpart					
16.	Main form: ʘᱤ Alternate form: none	Past Indefinite Tense	Never	Never	None
17.	Main form: ʘᱤᱤᱤᱤᱤᱤ Alternate form: none	Present Perfect Tense	Never	Never	None
Verbal suffix ʘᱤᱤᱤ for aka forms of verb structures					
18.	Main form: ʘᱤᱤᱤ Alternate form: none	In many tenses of aka forms of verb structures	Never	Never	None

Table 4.26

From the table 4.26 given above, the following observations can be made about the use of verbal suffixes in various tenses of the verb structures.

1. For the weak forms of verb structures that have a corresponding strong counterpart, a verbal suffix is invariably used for each of the sixteen tenses listed.
2. For the strong forms of verb structures with no object or with direct inanimate/animate object, there are four tenses, viz., *present/future indefinite tense*, *future indefinite tense*, *present imperative tense*, and *past repetitive tense*, in which no verbal suffix is used.
3. For the strong forms of verb structures with indirect inanimate/animate object, there are only five tenses which have valid forms, and a verbal suffix is invariably used with each of them.
4. For the weak forms of verb structures having no strong counterpart, there are only two tenses which have valid forms, and a verbal suffix is invariably used with each of them.
5. A few verbal suffixes of the same group bear a close resemblance to one another indicating a clear evolution in the meaning of the verb structures using these verbal suffixes. These subgroup of verbal suffixes are: (i) ᱛᱟ , ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟᱛᱟ , (ii) ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟᱛ , (iii) ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟᱛ , (iv) ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟᱛᱟ , (v) ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟ , (vi) ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟᱛᱟᱛᱟᱛᱟ , ᱛᱟᱛ , (vii) ᱛᱟᱛ , ᱛᱟᱛᱟᱛᱟᱛᱟᱛᱟ .

Besides the verbal suffix, other components of the verb structures, viz., object/subject infix, and terminator suffix finite ᱛ , may merge with the last verb of the main verb, and this would result in a modified form of the last verb which would get substantially changed in most cases. *However, we do not consider such modified forms of verbs as suffixed forms of verbs since they cannot be used independently.* If an object/subject infix is present in a modified form of a verb, then this form of the verb can be used together with the corresponding object/subject only. Similarly, if the terminator suffix finite ᱛ is present in a modified form of a verb, then the sentence containing the verb is complete, and this form of the verb can be used only in such complete sentences. It is to be noted that the terminator suffix finite ᱛ merges with the last word of the base component when there are no other components between them. If there is a component between the base component and the terminator suffix finite ᱛ , then both the component and the terminator suffix finite ᱛ may merge with the base component or the terminator suffix finite ᱛ merges with the component, but the component does not merge with the base component. No other terminator suffix merges with the last word of the base component even if there are no other components between them.

In the table 4.26 given above, we shall refer to *strong present continuous form of verb* or *strong past continuous form of verb* as **direct strong form of verb** since verbs of these forms either do not have any object or do not have any indirect object. Also, we shall refer to *strong present form of verb* or *strong past form of verb* as **indirect strong form of verb** since verbs of these forms must have an indirect object.

4.3.18 Classification of Verb Structures

A verb is said to be used in *direct strong form of verb structure* if (i) it has been used in a strong form of verb structure, and (ii) it does not have any indirect object. A verb is said to be used in *indirect strong form of verb structure* if (i) it has been used in a strong form of verb structure, and (ii) it has an indirect inanimate/animate object. A verb is said to be used in *aka form of verb structure* if the verb structure has verbal suffix aka in it. Till now, we have given examples of various kinds of verb structures. These verb structures can be naturally classified into the following types.

1. Basic forms of verb structures with noun/noun-equivalent as complement(table 4.2 & 4.21).
2. Basic forms of verb structures with adjective/adjective-equivalent as main verb(table 4.2 & 4.21).
3. Weak forms of verb structures that have a corresponding strong counterpart(table 4.4, 4.5, 4.6 & 4.8).
4. Weak forms of verb structures that have no strong counterpart(table 4.22).
5. Direct strong forms of verb structures without object/subject infix(table 4.7, 4.8 & 4.11).
6. Direct strong forms of verb structures with object/subject infix(table 4.11, 4.12, 4.15, 4.16 & 4.18).
7. Indirect strong forms of verb structures without object/subject infix(table 4.14).
8. Indirect strong forms of verb structures with object/subject infix(table 4.12, 4.13, 4.14 & 4.19).
9. Aka forms of verb structures(table 4.20).

There are two basic forms of verb structures of the first type, and three basic forms of verb structures of the second type. The semantics of these verb structures have been explained in section 4.1. Essentially, these forms of verb structures constitute the basic simple sentences of Santali language. These verb structures are very widely used in Santali language. *It is to be noted that there are only a few basic forms of verb structures in Santali. However, this is also the case with other languages as well, and most languages have only a few basic forms of verb structures.*

A verb that is used in weak form of verb structure may have one or more of the following semantics depending on the subject, and the meaning associated with the verb. But a different use of the verb in weak form of verb structure may possess a semantics which is different from the previous one, but is one of the following. A verb that is intransitive/transitive with active voice semantics for some of the tenses, when animate subject is used, would become transitive with passive voice semantics when inanimate subject is used. In section 4.3.6, the meaning of these semantics has been explained earlier using examples in the table 4.9.

1. Reflexive
2. Intransitive
3. Pseudo-transitive
4. Transitive with active voice semantics
5. Transitive with passive voice semantics

If a verb is used in direct strong form of verb structure, then it has one of the following semantics depending on the subject, and the meaning associated with the verb. Again, a different use of the verb in direct strong form of verb structure may possess a semantics which is different from the previous one, but is one of the following. Also, in the following, a direct strong form of verb structure having one of the first two semantics will be without object/subject infix, and a direct strong form of verb structure having one of the remaining three semantics will be with object/subject infix.

1. Intransitive(table 4.4, 4.5 & 4.7).
2. Transitive with direct inanimate object(table 4.7, 4.8 & 4.11).
3. Transitive with direct animate object and its structure has animate object infix(table 4.11, 4.12 & 4.15).
4. Intransitive, and its structure has animate subject infix(table 4.16 & 4.18).

5. Transitive with direct inanimate object and its structure has animate subject infix(table 4.15).

If a verb is used in indirect strong form of verb structure, then it has one of the following semantics depending on the subject, and the meaning associated with the verb. Again, a different use of the verb in indirect strong form of verb structure may possess a semantics which is different from the previous one, but is one of the following. Also, in the following, an indirect strong form of verb structure having the first semantics will be without object/subject infix, and an indirect strong form of verb structure having one of the remaining three semantics will be with object/subject infix.

1. Transitive with indirect inanimate object(table 4.14).
2. Transitive with indirect animate object and its structure has animate object infix(table 4.12, 4.13 & 4.14).
3. Intransitive, and its structure has animate subject infix(table 4.19).
4. Transitive with indirect inanimate/animate object and its structure has animate subject infix(table 4.19).

The aka form of verb structure in Santali may give rise to different forms of verb structure, but the most commonly used one among them corresponds to future continuous tense. Several examples of this form have been given in section 4.3.12. These forms of verb structures can be derived from the same general verb structure source given in section 3.3.1, but it may require minor modifications to suite some verb structures of these kinds which may be quite complex.

It is to be noted that the information about a verb structure in Santali as obtained above completely characterizes the verb structure, and we say that the meaning of the verb structure has been fully understood.

4.3.19 Classification of Verbs

A verb is said to be a **weak intransitive verb** if, without using any verb qualifier, (i) it can be used as an intransitive verb in all the tenses of weak form, and (ii) its use as a main verb in strong form(if possible) of verb structures does not make proper sense. A sample list of these verbs together with their weak present form is given in appendix A1. A verb is said to be a **strong intransitive verb** if, without using any verb qualifier, (i) it can be used as an intransitive verb in all the tenses of strong form, and (ii) it may possibly be used as an intransitive verb in some of the tenses of weak form. A sample list of these verbs together with their weak present form(if possible), strong present and past continuous forms is given in appendix A2. A verb is said to be a **strong transitive verb** if it can be used as a transitive verb, that has only a direct inanimate object, in all the tenses of direct strong form of verb structures without using any verb qualifier. Most of the strong transitive verbs can be used in weak form of verb structures, and they may have one or more of the following semantics, viz., *reflexive, intransitive, pseudo-transitive, transitive with active voice semantics, and transitive with passive voice semantics*. A sample list of these verbs together with their weak present form, strong present and past continuous forms is given in appendix A3. Transitive verbs that can have indirect objects are either strong intransitive verbs or strong transitive verbs, but not all of these verbs can be used as transitive verbs with indirect object. A sample list of transitive verbs which can have indirect object is given in appendix A4 together with their strong present and past forms.

5 Simple Sentences with More Complex Auxiliary Verbs

So far we have described verb structures that use only a few terminator suffix, viz., ୭, ୧୭, and ୫୭, and do not use many of the other components of general verb structure source. However, we have used all the eighteen verbal suffixes that are used in Santali language, and hence, no new verb structure that is different from the verb structures in the previous section in the verbal suffix part will be encountered in this section. In the following, we shall study more complex auxiliary verbs that are obtained by using one of the remaining terminator suffixes, and other components.

5.1 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix ୦୭'ୱ୭' or its equivalence

The terminator suffix finite ୭ may be replaced with terminator suffix ୦୭'ୱ୭' or its equivalence in present/future indefinite tense, future persistent indefinite tense, present continuous tense, and present persistent continuous tense, and this would give rise to **past repetitive tense, past persistent repetitive tense, past continuous tense, and past persistent continuous tense** form of verb structures respectively. The terminator suffix finite ୭ may also be replaced with terminator suffix ୦୭'ୱ୭' or its equivalence in present perfect tense and past perfect tense, but the semantics of resulting verb structures is very similar to that of past perfect tense, and hence, we have not considered them as separate independent tense. Nonetheless, they may be used in practice once in a while. In the table 5.1 shown below, we have given the verb structures of intransitive verbs ୭୭.୩ and ୧୭୭ as illustration for the above four tenses. The verb structures for other kinds of verbs for the above four tenses can also be derived easily since only the terminator suffix finite ୭ needs to be replaced with terminator suffix ୦୭'ୱ୭' or its equivalence, and therefore, they are not shown.

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ୭୭.୩	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ୧୭୭
1.	Past repetitive tense (୭୭ୱୱ୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭)	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୭୭.୩ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୭୭.୩+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I used to run. Principal verb: ୭୭.୩ Auxiliary verb: ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୧୭୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୧୭୭+୭୭+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I used to go. Principal verb: ୧୭୭୭୭ Auxiliary verb: ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'
2.	Past persistent repetitive tense (ୱ୭୭୭୭୭୭୭୭. ୭୭ୱୱ୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭)	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୭୭.୩ ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୭୭.୩+୭୭୭+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I used to run (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ୭୭.୩ Auxiliary verb: ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୧୭୭ ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୧୭୭+୭୭୭+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I used to go (with a view to reach the destination, and remain there). Principal verb: ୧୭୭ Auxiliary verb: ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'
3.	Past continuous tense (୭୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭)	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୭୭.୩୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୭୭.୩+୭୭+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I was running. Principal verb: ୭୭.୩୭୭ Auxiliary verb: ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୧୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୧୭୭+୭୭+୭୭+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I was going. Principal verb: ୧୭୭୭୭ Auxiliary verb: ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'
4.	Past persistent continuous tense (ୱ୭୭୭୭୭୭୭୭. ୭୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭୭ ୭୭୭)	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୭୭.୩ ୭୭୭ ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୭୭.୩+୭୭୭+୭୭୭+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I was continuing to run (till some	ୱୱୱୱୱ ୧୭୭ ୭୭୭ ୭୭୭ ୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭' [୧୭୭+୭୭୭+୭୭୭+୦୭'ୱ୭'ୱ୭'] I was continuing to go (with a view

	ଫୁଲେ)	desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ଫୁଲେ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠଉଠାଠା	to reach the destination, and remain there). Principal verb: ଧୂଢ଼େ Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠଉଠାଠା
--	-------	--	--

Table 5.1

5.2 Uses of the Tenses having Terminator Suffix ଠଉଠାଠା or its equivalence

The uses of the four tenses in table 5.1 were not discussed earlier as their introduction was deferred to this section. In any case, these tenses have very straight forward timing-related semantics, and in the following, a brief description of the semantics of each of these tenses is given together with examples to illustrate their uses. The semantics of these tenses for other kinds of verbs are also the same, and therefore, they would not be described separately.

A. Uses of Past Repetitive Tense Forms

- (i) *To denote an action that has been repeated in the past many times:* ବେନୀ ନୀଳ ଫୁଲେନୀଳ ଠଉଠାଠା । He used to beat me. In this example, ବେନୀ means 'he', ନୀଳ means 'I', and ଫୁଲେନୀଳ means 'to beat'. It is to be noted that the semantics of repetition has been realized in a regular verb structure without using any adverb.

B. Uses of Past Persistent Repetitive Tense Forms

- (i) *To denote an action that has been repeated in the past many times, each time with a view to achieve certain definite objective:* ବେନୀ ନୀଳ ଫୁଲେ ବଞ୍ଚେ.କ [ବଞ୍ଚେ+ନୀଳ] ଠଉଠାଠା । He used to beat me (with a view to achieve certain definite objective). This is the same as the previous example except that the semantics of persistence has been added to it.

C. Uses of Past Continuous Tense Forms

- (i) *To denote an action that was taking place in the past at some instant of time:* ନୀଳ ଠଉଠାଠା ନୀଳ ଧୂଢ଼େ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠଉଠାଠା । I was going to the market. In this example, ନୀଳ means 'I', ଠଉଠାଠା means 'market', and ଧୂଢ଼େ means 'to go'. It is to be noted that the completion of the action is not implied. Such sentences should be translated to past continuous tense in English.
- (ii) *To denote an action that took place in the past regularly, and that was continuing to be repeated till some point of time in the past:* ବେନୀ ଫୁଲେ ଘାଟେ ୧ ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠଉଠାଠା । He was taking bath everyday. In this example, ବେନୀ means 'he', ଫୁଲେ ଘାଟେ means 'everyday', and ବଞ୍ଚେ means 'to take bath'. Again, it is to be noted that whenever the action was performed, the completion of the action is not implied. Such sentences should be translated to past continuous tense in English.

D. Uses of Past Persistent Continuous Tense Forms

- (i) *To denote an action that was taking place at some instant of time in the past together with the fact that the subject persisted in continuing the action till some desired objective was achieved:* ବେନୀ ଧୂଢ଼େ ଫୁଲେ.ନୀଳ ୧ ଧୂଢ଼େ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠଉଠାଠା । He was coming up to this place. In this example, ବେନୀ means 'he', ଧୂଢ଼େ means 'this place', ଫୁଲେ.ନୀଳ means 'up to', and ଧୂଢ଼େ means 'to come'. The above sentence means that he was coming, and continued to come with the intention to reach this

place. Sentences of this kind may normally be translated to past continuous tense in English.

- (ii) *To denote an action that was taking place at some instant of time in the past together with the fact that the subject persisted in the state resulting due to the completion of the action of the verb till some desired objective was achieved:* ነረገ ረፅ'ወጊሬ [ረፅ'ወጊ+ጊ] ካህኮ ኮፅሬ ኮፅሮ ዐፅወጊ'ኳ ፤ He was standing in the shadow here (and remained here till some desired objective was achieved). In this example, ነረገ means 'he', ረፅ'ወጊ means 'here', and ካህኮ means 'to stand in the shadow'. The above sentence means that he was standing in the shadow here, and continued to stand here till some desired objective was achieved. These sentences also may normally be translated to past continuous tense in English.
- (iii) *To denote an action that took place in the past regularly and that was continued to be repeated till some instant of time in the past. In addition, whenever the action took place, the subject persisted either in continuing the action or in the state resulting due to the completion of the action of the verb, till some desired objective was achieved:* ነረገ ቁገሮ ሠገጋፅ ረፅ'ወጊሬ[ረፅ'ወጊ+ጊ] ካህኮ ኮፅሬ ኮፅሮ ዐፅወጊ'ኳ ፤ He was standing in the shadow here everyday. This is the same example as in D(ii) above except that the verb is now qualified using the adverb ቁገሮ ሠገጋፅ which means 'everyday'. The above sentence means that the action of standing in shadow has been repeated in the past everyday, and each time, it was continued till some desired objective was achieved. These sentences may also be translated to English as past continuous tense.

5.3 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix ፆፀ.ፎገፍ

The terminator suffix finite ፀ may be replaced with terminator suffix ፆፀ.ፎገፍ in present/future indefinite tense, and future persistent indefinite tense, and this would give rise to **present immediate tense, and present persistent immediate tense** form of verb structures respectively. Replacement of terminator suffix finite ፀ with terminator suffix ፆፀ.ፎገፍ in other tenses does not result in verb structures that have meaningful semantics. In the table 5.2 shown below, we have given the verb structures of intransitive verbs ቁፀ.ፈ and ሂጊሮ as illustration for the above two tenses. The verb structures for other kinds of verbs for the above two tenses can also be derived easily since only the terminator suffix finite ፀ needs to be replaced with terminator suffix ፆፀ.ፎገፍ, and therefore, they are not shown. The semantics of these tenses are clear from the translated English sentences in the table 5.2. Since there is no substantial change in the timing-related semantics of the above two new tenses from the semantics of the original tenses, we did not consider them as fundamental verb structures of Santali language. Nonetheless, the above two new tenses have a clear timing-related semantics which is different from those of other tenses.

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ቁፀ.ፈ	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ሂጊሮ
1.	Present immediate tense (ሂፀፎገፍ ሂገዐፀፎ ሂፀፎ)	ገጥገጥ ቁፀ.ፈ ፆፀ.ፎገፍ [ቁፀ.ፈ+ፆፀ.ፎገፍ] ፤ I am about to run. Principal verb: ቁፀ.ፈ Auxiliary verb: ፆፀ.ፎገፍ	ገጥገጥ ሂጊሮፀፍ ፆፀ.ፎገፍ [ሂጊሮ+ፀፍ+ፆፀ.ፎገፍ] ፤ I am about to go. Principal verb: ሂጊሮፀፍ Auxiliary verb: ፆፀ.ፎገፍ
2.	Present persistent	ገጥገጥ ቁፀ.ፈ ኮፅሬ ፆፀ.ፎገፍ	ገጥገጥ ሂጊሮ ኮፅሬ ፆፀ.ፎገፍ

immediate tense (ঐতৎকালিক). লভতে চলতে চলবে)	[ঐ.ঈ+বহিৎ+পথ.গাও] । I am about to start and continue running (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ঐ.ঈ Auxiliary verb: বহিৎ পথ.গাও	[লভে+বহিৎ+পথ.গাও] । I am about to start and continue going (with a view to reach the destination, and remain there). Principal verb: লভে Auxiliary verb: বহিৎ পথ.গাও
--	--	---

Table 5.2

It is also to be noted that a simple sentence with terminator suffix *পথ.গাও* may be considered as a partially truncated simple sentence even when the terminator suffix *পথ.গাও* is still present in the sentence. That is, a simple sentence with terminator suffix *পথ.গাও* may be used in any place where a partially truncated simple sentence may be used.

5.4 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix *ঐতৎকালিক*

The terminator suffix finite *ঐ* may be replaced with terminator suffix *ঐতৎকালিক* in present/future indefinite tense, and future persistent indefinite tense. However, the resulting sentences are somewhat peculiar in the sense that there is no bound emphazier corresponding to the animate subject. Probably, *ঐতৎকালিক* has been used as a verb, and it is the terminator suffix finite *ঐ* that is missing. In the table 5.3 shown below, we have given the verb structures of intransitive verbs *ঐ.ঈ* and *লভে* as illustration. The verb structures for other kinds of verbs can also be derived easily since only the terminator suffix finite *ঐ* needs to be replaced with terminator suffix *ঐতৎকালিক*, and therefore, they are not shown.

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb <i>ঐ.ঈ</i>	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb <i>লভে</i>
1.	Present/future indefinite tense(ঐতৎকালিক চলতে-চলবে চলবে)	ঐ.ঈ <i>ঐ.ঈ</i> <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i> [ঐ.ঈ+ঐ] । I need to run. Principal verb: <i>ঐ.ঈ</i> Auxiliary verb: <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i>	ঐ.ঈ <i>লভে</i> <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i> [লভে+ঐ+ঐতৎকালিক] । I need to go. Principal verb: <i>লভে</i> Auxiliary verb: <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i>
2.	Future persistent indefinite tense (ঐতৎকালিক চলতে <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i> চলবে)	ঐ.ঈ <i>ঐ.ঈ</i> <i>বহিৎ</i> <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i> [ঐ.ঈ+বহিৎ+ঐতৎকালিক] । I need to continue running (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: <i>ঐ.ঈ</i> Auxiliary verb: <i>বহিৎ</i> <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i>	ঐ.ঈ <i>লভে</i> <i>বহিৎ</i> <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i> [লভে+বহিৎ+ঐতৎকালিক] । I need to continue going (with a view to reach the destination, and remain there). Principal verb: <i>লভে</i> Auxiliary verb: <i>বহিৎ</i> <i>ঐতৎকালিক</i>

Table 5.3

5.5 Verb Structures having Terminator Suffix *ঐ*

The terminator suffix finite *ঐ* may be replaced with terminator suffix *ঐ* in most of the tenses, viz., present/future indefinite tense, future persistent indefinite tense, present continuous tense, present persistent continuous tense, present perfect tense, past indefinite tense, and past perfect tense. The terminator suffix *ঐ* is used to suggest an implied question about the action of

5.6 Verb Structures having Free Emphasizer ဥပမာ

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ඉනි.෧	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb උ22උ
1.	Future indefinite tense(උභව්‍යවිධ ඉනිඛනිඳු උනිනි)	ඈඉඉඉ ඉනි.෧නි උඛනිනි [ඉනි.෧+නි+උඛනිනි] I shall run. Principal verb: ඉනි.෧නි Auxiliary verb: උඛනිනි	ඈඉඉඉ උ22උනිනි නි උඛනිනි [උ22උ+නිනි+උඛනිනි] I shall go. Principal verb: උ22උනිනි Auxiliary verb: නි උඛනිනි
2.	Future perfect tense (උනි.022උ ඉනිඛනිනි උනිනි)	ඈඉඉඉ ඉනි.෧ භනිනි-නි උඛනිනි [ඉනි.෧+භනිනි+නි+උඛනිනි] I shall have run. Principal verb: ඉනි.෧ Auxiliary verb: භනිනි-නි උඛනිනි	ඈඉඉඉ උ22උ භනිනි-නි උඛනිනි [උ22උ+භනිනි+නි+උඛනිනි] I shall have gone. Principal verb: උ22උ Auxiliary verb: භනිනි-නි උඛනිනි

5.7 Verb Structures having Free Emphasizer ㄱᆞᆫ

	Tense of the Forms	Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive
--	---------------------------	--	--

Table 5.5

Table 5.6

5.9 Verb Structures having Emphasizing Infix ʒʒ

The emphasizing infix ʒʒ may be placed immediately before the terminator suffix and the possessive infix in most of the tenses, but it cannot be used with tenses in which the terminator suffix is different from finite ʈ, ʈʈʋʒʈʈ and ʑʈ. The effect of adding the emphasizing infix ʒʒ is to emphasize the fact that the action represented by the verb will certainly take place or has certainly taken place.

5.10 Verb Structures having Possessive Infix

A possessive infix may be placed immediately just before the terminator suffix finite ʈ to indicate that the action being performed by the subject is on behalf of some one else. A possessive infix cannot be used with tenses in which the terminator suffix is different from finite ʈ, ʈʈʈ (or its equivalence) and ʑʈ. It means that the possessive infix can be used only with the following tenses: present/future indefinite tense, future indefinite tense, future persistent indefinite tense, future continuous tense, future perfect tense, present indefinite tense, present continuous tense, present persistent continuous tense, present perfect tense, present imperative tense, present persistent imperative tense, past indefinite tense, past persistent indefinite tense, and past perfect tense. For the possessive infix to be used in a simple sentence, it is not necessary to have a reference to the corresponding pronoun in the simple sentence, and the possessive infix can be used directly. If a possessive infix corresponding to a pronoun/noun is used in a simple sentence, the following intuitive rules may be used to decide whether a reference to the pronoun/noun is necessary in the simple sentence corresponding to the possessive infix used.

1. A possessive infix corresponding to a part of a pronoun in the subject cannot be used.
2. If a possessive infix corresponding to a pronoun is used in a simple sentence, and the subject of the simple sentence is part of the pronoun, then even a semantic reason for a reference to the pronoun in the simple sentence may not exist, and a reference to the pronoun cannot even be made syntactically. However, a semantic reason for a reference to the pronoun may exist in the above case, and a reference to the pronoun has to be made, but it may be just implicit.
3. If a possessive infix corresponding to a pronoun in 1st and 2nd person is used in a simple sentence, and the subject of the simple sentence is not part of the pronoun, then a reference to the pronoun is required in the simple sentence for semantic reason, but it may be just implicit.
4. If a possessive infix corresponding to a pronoun in 3rd person is used in a simple sentence, and the subject of the simple sentence is not part of the pronoun, then an explicit reference to the pronoun is required in the simple sentence for semantic reason.
5. If a possessive infix in a simple sentence is corresponding to animate noun, then an explicit reference to the noun is necessary in the simple sentence for semantic reason.
6. If the subject of a simple sentence is inanimate, a reference to the pronoun corresponding to the possessive infix used in the simple sentence is necessary for semantic reason, but it may be just implicit.

In the table 5.7 shown below, we have given forms of possessive pronouns for each of the pronouns together with examples to illustrate their use.

	Personal Pronouns	Forms of Possessive	Examples to Illustrate the Use of Possessive Infix
--	-------------------	---------------------	--

	in Santali	Infix	
1.	ମା	ଠାମା	<p>ଫୁଲୁଆଁ ଖାସି ଫୁଲୁଆଁ ଖାସି ଠାମା [ଫୁଲୁଆଁ+ଖାସି+ଠାମା+ଆଁ] । This vegetable dish of mine is tasty. Principal verb: ଫୁଲୁଆଁ Auxiliary verb: ଖାସି ଠାମା</p> <p>In the above sentence, the subject is inanimate, and a reference to the pronoun ମା corresponding to the possessive infix ଠାମା is implicitly made as ମାଆ.ଫୁଲୁଆଁ ଖାସି.</p>
2.	ଆମା	ଠାଆମା	<p>ମାମାମା ଫୁଲୁଆଁ ଠାଆମା ଫୁଲୁଆଁ ଠାଆମା [ଫୁଲୁଆଁ+ଠାଆମା+ଆମା+ଆଁ] । I shall go on behalf of two of us. Principal verb: ଫୁଲୁଆଁ Auxiliary verb: ଠାଆମା</p> <p>In the above sentence, possessive infix ଠାଆମା has been used for ଆମା, and the subject ମା is part of ଆମା. Since there is no semantic reason for referring to ଆମା, a reference to ଆମା is not made in the sentence(also, it cannot be made).</p>
3.	ଆମାମା	ଠାଆମାମା	<p>ମାମାମା ଠାଆମାମା ଠାଆମାମା ଠାଆମାମା [ଠାଆମା+ଠାଆମା+ଆମା+ଆଁ] । He will continue to do our work(till it gets over). Principal verb: ଠାଆମା Auxiliary verb: ଠାଆମାମା</p> <p>In the above example, ମାମା is considered either not part of ଆମାମା or part of ଆମାମା. In either case, a reference to ଆମାମା is necessary for semantic reason. But if the reference to ଆମାମା is made implicit, then ମାମା is certainly part of ଆମାମା.</p>
4.	ଆମା	ଠାଆମା	<p>ମାମାମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା [ଠାଆମା+ଠାଆମା+ଆମା+ଆଁ] । I shall bring food for us(on our behalf). Principal verb: ଠାଆମା Auxiliary verb: ଠାଆମା</p> <p>In the above example, ମାମା is part of ଆମା, but for semantic reason, an explicit reference to ଆମା is necessary in the sentence. This example is similar to the one given in 2 above. However, in 2 above, there was no semantic reason for referring to ଆମା.</p>
5.	ଆମା	ଠାଆମା	<p>ମାମାମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା [ଠାଆମା+ଠାଆମା+ଆମା+ଆଁ] । I shall clean our house(on our behalf). Principal verb: ଠାଆମା Auxiliary verb: ଠାଆମା</p> <p>In the above example, ମାମା is part of ଆମା, and an implicit reference to ଆମା is made in the sentence as ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା for semantic reason.</p>
6.	ଆମା	ଠାଆମା	<p>ମାମାମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା [ଠାଆମା+ଠାଆମା+ଆମା+ଆଁ] । He will continue to wash your clothes(on your behalf till they are clean). Principal verb: ଠାଆମା Auxiliary verb: ଠାଆମା</p> <p>In the above example, ମାମା is not part of ଆମା. Since ଆମା is in 2nd person, an explicit reference to it is not necessary. However, an explicit reference to ଆମା is made in the sentence for the sake of clarity.</p>
7.	ଆମା	ଠାଆମା	<p>ମାମାମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା [ଠାଆମା+ଠାଆମା+ଆମା+ଆଁ] । You will dance(on behalf of both of you). This example is similar to the example in 2 above.</p>
8.	ଆମା	ଠାଆମା	<p>ମାମାମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା ଠାଆମା [ଠାଆମା+ଠାଆମା+ଆମା+ଆଁ] । I am taking your boy child(on your behalf). Principal verb: ଠାଆମା</p>

			Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି
	This example is similar to the example given in 6 above.		
9.	ଉଁ, ଏଈ, ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି, ଈଞ୍ଚି	ଓଞ୍ଚି	ଏଈବି ଉଁଞ୍ଚି ଇଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି ବଞ୍ଚି ଗଞ୍ଚି ବଞ୍ଚି ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି [ଗଞ୍ଚି+ବଞ୍ଚି+ଓଞ୍ଚି+ଉଁ] । They took his luggage(on his behalf). Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଚି Auxiliary verb: ବଞ୍ଚି ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି
	This example is similar to the example given in 6 above.		
10.	ଉ.ବଞ୍ଚି, ଏଈବି, ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି, ଈଞ୍ଚି	ଓଞ୍ଚି.ବଞ୍ଚି	ଏଈ ଓଞ୍ଚି.ଗଞ୍ଚି ପଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି ଓଞ୍ଚି.ବଞ୍ଚି ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି [ପଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି+ଓଞ୍ଚି+ଓଞ୍ଚି.ବଞ୍ଚି+ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି] । He was driving their(which includes him as one of two members) vehicle(on their behalf).
	This example is similar to the example given in 5 above.		
11.	ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଏଈବି, ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି, ଈଞ୍ଚି	ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି	ଉଞ୍ଚି ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି ବଞ୍ଚି ଉଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି [ଉଞ୍ଚି+ଓଞ୍ଚି+ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି+ଉଁ] । They are eating their food(for themselves). Principal verb: ଉଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି Auxiliary verb: ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି
	In the above example, ଉଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି is part of itself, and an implicit reference to ଉଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି is made in the sentence as ଉଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି for semantic reason.		

Table 5.7

From the examples in table 5.7 and the intuitive rules given above, it is clear that if the subject of a simple sentence is a pronoun, then, in many cases, a reference to the pronoun corresponding to the possessive infix used in the simple sentence may not be required. In order to use these rules correctly, it is necessary to know which pronoun can be part of which other pronouns. In the table 5.8 shown below, we have given a list of pronouns for each of the pronoun which can be part of any of the pronouns in the list..

	Personal Pronouns in Santali	Person and Number	Personal Pronouns in English	List of Pronouns of Which the Pronoun in the First Column can be a Part
1.	ମୁଁ	First, Singular	I	ମୁଁ, ଉପଞ୍ଚି, ଉ.ପମୁ, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
2.	ଉପଞ୍ଚି	First, Dual	Two of us (including listener)	ଉପଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି
3.	ଉ.ପମୁ	First, Dual	Two of us (excluding listener)	ଉ.ପମୁ, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
4.	ଉଞ୍ଚି	First, Plural	We (including listener)	ଉଞ୍ଚି
5.	ଉପଞ୍ଚି	First, Plural	We (excluding listener)	ଉପଞ୍ଚି
6.	ତୁ	Second, Singular	You	ତୁ, ଉ.ତୁ, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉପଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି
7.	ଉ.ତୁ	Second, Dual	Two of you	ଉ.ତୁ, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି
8.	ଉଞ୍ଚି	Second, Plural	You	ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି
9.	ଉଁ	Third, Singular	He	ଉଁ, ଉ.ବଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉ.ପମୁ, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
10.	ଉ.ବଞ୍ଚି	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଉ.ବଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
11.	ଉଞ୍ଚି	Third, Plural	They	ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
12.	ଏଈ	Third, Singular	He(far)	ଉଁ, ଉ.ବଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉ.ପମୁ, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
13.	ଏଈବି	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଉ.ବଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
14.	ଏଈବି	Third, Plural	They	ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉପଞ୍ଚି
15.	ଓଞ୍ଚିଞ୍ଚି	Third, Singular	He(very far)	ଉଁ, ଉ.ବଞ୍ଚି, ଉଞ୍ଚି, ଉ.ପମୁ, ଉପଞ୍ଚି

16.	ଓଞ୍.ଝବଞଝ	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଞ୍.ବଞଝ, ଞ୍.ବଞ୍, ଞ୍.ପଞ୍
17.	ଓଞ୍.ଝବ୍	Third, Plural	They	ଞ୍.ବଞ୍, ଞ୍.ପଞ୍
18.	ଝବ୍	Third, Singular	He(very near)	ଞ୍, ଞ୍.ବଞଝ, ଞ୍.ବଞ୍, ଞ୍.ପଞଞ, ଞ୍.ପଞ୍
19.	ଝବଞଝ	Third, Dual	Two of them	ଞ୍.ବଞଝ, ଞ୍.ବଞ୍, ଞ୍.ପଞ୍
20.	ଝବ୍	Third, Plural	They	ଞ୍.ବଞ୍, ଞ୍.ପଞ୍

Table 5.8

6 Main Verbs and Verb Qualifiers

The base component of a verb structure consists of a main verb that is optionally followed by a sequence of one or more words, called verb qualifiers. The main verb itself consists of a sequence of one or more verbs in base form. If the main verb of a verb structure consists of a single verb, then it is said to be a *simple main verb*; otherwise, it is said to be a *compound main verb*. An action-centric form of verb cannot be accompanied with any verb qualifiers. Hence, if verb qualifiers are used in a verb structure, then the verbs of the main verb have to be in root or reciprocal form only. The verbs qualifiers are words which are always used in a verb structure between the main verb and the verbal suffix(if present; otherwise the next available component), and they do not make any sense separately. That is, these words cannot be used otherwise in a sentence. Most compound main verbs consists of a pair of verbs which may be of different types, i.e., one may be weak and the other may be strong or vice versa. In the following, we first give examples of compound main verbs consisting of a pair of verbs followed by a description of some of the widely used verb qualifiers.

6.1 Compound Main Verbs

Conceptually, any pair of verbs in base form may be used as compound main verb if it makes a meaningful combination. Also, verbs in reciprocal and action-centric form are also used occasionally as a part of a compound main verb. Hence, most compound main verbs consists of a pair of verbs in root form only. In the table 6.1 shown below, we have given examples of compound main verbs consisting of a pair of verbs to illustrate their features.

	Pair of Verbs in Root Form	Examples of the Use of Pair of Verbs as Compound Main Verbs	
1.	ଞ୍.ଞ ଲଞଞ	a.	ଞଞ ଞ୍.ବଞ୍ଞଞଞଞ ଞ୍.ବଞଞଞ ଞଞ ଞ୍.ଞ ଲଞଞ ଲଞଞଞ । I went running to their house. In this example, ଞ୍.ଞ means 'to run', and ଲଞଞ means 'to go'. Also, ଞ୍.ଞ is a strong intransitive verb, and ଲଞଞ is a weak intransitive verb. Hence, this pair is of <i>strong-weak</i> type. But the verb ଲଞଞ is the prominent verb in this pair since the verb ଞ୍.ଞ will not make any sense without the verb ଲଞଞ in this case. Hence, the verb structure assumes the <i>weak form</i> . Besides, the action of verb ଞ୍.ଞ encompasses the action of verb ଲଞଞ, and so ଞ୍.ଞ precedes ଲଞଞ.
		b.	ଞଞଞଞଞ ଞ୍.ଞ ଲଞଞଞ ଞଞଞଞଞଞଞଞ । I finished running. In this example, ଞ୍.ଞ means 'to run', and ଲଞଞଞ means 'to happen' which is a weak intransitive verb. Hence, this pair is also of <i>strong-weak</i> type. However, in this case, ଞ୍.ଞ is the prominent verb since the verb ଲଞଞଞ alone will not make any sense without the verb ଞ୍.ଞ. Therefore, the verb structure assumes the <i>strong form</i> . Besides, the action of verb
	ଞ୍.ଞ ଲଞଞଞ		

			ହୁଅ.ଆ precedes the action of verb ଘାରି, and so ହୁଅ.ଆ precedes ଘାରି.
2.	ଠାଁଢି ଠାଁଢି	<p>ଧେନି ଠାଁଢି ଠାଁଢି ଥିବୁଥିବୁ । He is standing still.</p> <p>In this example, ଠାଁଢି means ‘to stand’, and ଠାଁଢି means ‘to remain still’. Both ଠାଁଢି and ଠାଁଢି are weak intransitive verbs. Hence, this pair is of <i>weak-weak</i> type, and the verb structure assumes the <i>weak form</i>. Besides, the action of verb ଠାଁଢି precedes the action of verb ଠାଁଢି, and so ଠାଁଢି precedes ଠାଁଢି.</p>	
3.	ସବୁଥୁ.ଆ ଘାରି	a.	ଧେନି ସବୁଥୁ.ଆ ଘାରି ଥିବୁଥିବୁ । He has returned back.
		b.	ଧେନି ଘାରି ସବୁଥୁ.ଆ ଥିବୁଥିବୁ । He has returned back.
		<p>In this example, ସବୁଥୁ.ଆ means ‘to return’, and ଘାରି means ‘to come’. Also, both ସବୁଥୁ.ଆ and ଘାରି are weak intransitive verbs. Hence, this pair is of <i>weak-weak</i> type, and the verb structure assumes the <i>weak form</i>. Besides, the action of verb ସବୁଥୁ.ଆ encompasses the action of verb ଘାରି and vice versa. Hence, we are able to interchange the order of these verbs in the verb structure keeping the semantics almost intact.</p>	
4.	ନିନିଆ ଗାରି	<p>ଆ ଗାରିନିଆ ନିନିଆ ଗାରି ବଢ଼େ-ଥୁ । I shot a mango with a blunt arrow, which made it fall.</p> <p>In this example, ନିନିଆ means ‘mango’, ନିନିଆ means ‘to shoot with a blunt arrow’, and ଗାରି means ‘to make something fall’. Here, both ନିନିଆ and ଗାରି are transitive verbs with direct inanimate object. Hence, this pair is of <i>strong-strong</i> type, and the verb structure assumes the <i>strong form</i>. Besides, the action of verb ନିନିଆ precedes the action of verb ଗାରି, and so ନିନିଆ precedes ଗାରି. However, in this case, both ନିନିଆ and ଗାରି may be used independently.</p>	
5.	ଠାଁଢି ଘାରି	<p>ଗାରିନିଆ ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ ବଢ଼ି ଠାଁଢି ଘାରି ବଢ଼େ-ଥୁ । A tiger was killed by shooting it with an arrow.</p> <p>In this example, ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ means ‘tiger’, ଠାଁଢି means ‘to shoot with an arrow’, and ଘାରି means ‘to kill’. In this case, both ଠାଁଢି and ଘାରି are transitive verbs with direct animate object. Hence, this pair is also of <i>strong-strong</i> type, and the verb structure assumes the <i>strong form</i>. Besides, the action of verb ଠାଁଢି precedes the action of verb ଘାରି, and so ଠାଁଢି precedes ଘାରି. In this case also, both ଠାଁଢି and ଘାରି may be used independently.</p>	
6.	ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ	<p>ଧେନି.ସବୁଥୁ.ସବୁଥୁ ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ । They(two of them) killed each other by shooting with arrow.</p> <p>In this example, ଧେନି.ସବୁଥୁ.ସବୁଥୁ means ‘two of them’, ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ means ‘to shoot each other with arrow’, and ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ means ‘to kill each other’. In this case, both ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ and ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ are weak intransitive verbs. Hence, this pair is of <i>weak-weak</i> type, and the verb structure assumes the <i>weak form</i>. Besides, the action of verb ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ precedes the action of verb ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ, and so ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ precedes ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ. In this case also, both ଠାଁଢି.ସବୁଥୁ and ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ may be used independently.</p>	
7.	ଠାଁଢି ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ	<p>ଧେନି ଠାଁଢି ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ । He would kill by shooting with an arrow.</p> <p>In this example, ଧେନି means ‘he’, ଠାଁଢି means ‘to shoot with an arrow’, and ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ means ‘to kill’. In this case, ଠାଁଢି is a transitive verb with direct animate/inanimate object and ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ becomes a weak intransitive verb. Hence, this pair is of <i>strong-weak</i> type. Since the verb ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ is prominent in this case, the verb structure assumes the <i>weak form</i>. Besides, the action of verb ଠାଁଢି precedes the action of verb ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ, and so ଠାଁଢି precedes ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ. In this case also, both ଠାଁଢି and ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ may be used independently.</p>	
8.	ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ	ଧେନି ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ ଘାରି.ସବୁଥୁ । They desire to learn.	

୧୭୧୭	In this example, ହ୧ବ୍ବି means ‘they’, ଉଠଝ means ‘to learn’, and ୧୭୧୭ means ‘to desire’. Here, ଉଠଝ୧୭ is action-centric form of ଉଠଝ, and is a weak intransitive verb. ୧୭୧୭ always requires direct strong form of verb structure with subject infix, and in any compound main verb containing ୧୭୧୭, the resulting verb structure will always have this form. Also, instead of ଉଠଝ୧୭, a verb of any other kind could have been used. Hence, this kind of pair of verbs belongs neither to <i>weak-strong</i> type nor to any other type we have encountered so far. Since ୧୭୧୭ is always prominent in any verb structure containing it, the verb structure assumes the direct strong form of verb structure with subject infix.
------	---

Table 6.1

From the table 6.1 shown above, the following observations can be made on the compound main verbs consisting of a pair of verbs.

1. **Order of Verbs:** In all of the above examples, the action of the first verb either precedes in time with/without causality or encompasses the action of the second verb. In general, this is true of most such pairs of verbs, and the order of verbs cannot be interchanged. However, in case of a pair of verbs of the same type, viz. weak-weak or strong-strong, it may be possible to interchange the order of the verbs provided this interchange of order results in a meaningful semantics which may be the same as the original semantics or somewhat different from the original semantics. Example 3 in the table 6.1 illustrates this case.
2. **Weak-Strong Pair of Verbs:** In the table 6.1, we have not given any example of weak-strong pair of verbs. This is because the action of a weak verb cannot encompass or precede in sequence the action of a strong verb. That is, the action of a strong verb cannot result or follow from the action of a weak verb. Hence, such pairs of verbs are not feasible.
3. **Form of Verb Structure:** In case of strong-weak pair of verbs, the form of verb structure may be either strong or weak depending on the action that is prominent in the pair. Example 1 of table 6.1 illustrates this case. In case of weak-weak or strong-strong pair of verbs, the verb structure assumes weak or strong form respectively. However, if a compound main verb is followed by verb qualifiers, then the form of the verb structure would also depend on the verb qualifiers.
4. **Compound Main Verbs having ୧୭୧୭ as one of the Verbs:** ୧୭୧୭ is a special verb that requires direct strong form of verb structure with subject infix. Hence, if it is part of a compound main verb, the main verb also assumes direct strong of verb structure with subject infix. Example 8 in table 6.1 illustrates this case.
5. **Semantics of Relationship between Verbs in a Compound Main Verb:** Different languages have different mechanisms to concatenate verbs in order to show the relationship that exists between them. As in any other language, this relationship has to be interpreted by the speaker or the listener. Besides other mechanisms(to be described later), one of the ways to concatenate verbs in Santali is to place them one after another as a part of main verb. Just like other languages, the semantics of the relationship between the actions represented by the verbs could vary widely ranging from simple timing sequence, cause and effect relation, one verb being object of another, concurrent occurrence of actions, and so on. *It is to be noted that the mechanism of concatenation of verbs in Santali is much more simpler compared to those in many other languages.*

A verb qualifier in a verb structure of Santali can modify the characteristics of the main verb in various ways. Just like action-centric forms of verbs, it may increase the emphasis on the action of the main verb or it may enhance the timing related semantics of the main verb or it may make the main verb causative, and so on. But it is still very difficult to give a classification of verb qualifiers. Besides, if there are more than one verb qualifiers in a verb structure, then they can occur in a certain order only. A partial list of verb qualifiers is as follows: *ᱥᱚᱠᱟ*/ᱡᱚᱠᱟ, *ᱵᱤᱨ*, *ᱦᱚᱛᱚᱜ*, *ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*/*ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*, *ᱴᱚᱴᱷᱚ*, *ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*/*ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*, *ᱴᱚᱴᱷᱚ*, *ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*/*ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*, *ᱴᱚᱴᱷᱚ*, *ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*/*ᱢᱚᱝᱞᱚᱜ*, *ᱴᱚᱴᱷᱚ*. It is to be noted that these verb qualifiers do not resemble any of the verbal suffixes in table 4.26 structurally. This is because their function is totally different from those of verbal suffixes. In the following, we give a brief description of each of these verb qualifiers along with examples to illustrate their use.

The verb qualifier $\text{ᖃᖅ}/\text{ᐱᖃᖅ}$ can be used with any main verb consisting of root or reciprocal forms of verbs, and has a wide variety of semantics. It can be used with weak form of verb structure, direct strong form of verb structure as well as indirect strong form of verb structure. *If the main verb is transitive, and the principal verb consisting of the main verb and the verb qualifier $\text{ᖃᖅ}/\text{ᐱᖃᖅ}$ has direct/indirect animate object, then the direct object of the main verb also needs to be given; otherwise, the meaning of the sentence may become ambiguous.* When the verb qualifier $\text{ᖃᖅ}/\text{ᐱᖃᖅ}$ is used in a verb structure, a meaning different from that of the main verb is associated with the verb structure. In the table 6.2 shown below, we have given the semantics of different forms of verb structures having the verb qualifier $\text{ᖃᖅ}/\text{ᐱᖃᖅ}$ in them.

	Form of Verb Structure having the Verb Qualifier ଡଢ଼ି/ଓଡ଼ି in it	Semantics of Verb Structure having Animate Subject and the Verb Qualifier ଡ଼ି/ଓଡ଼ି in it	Table Numbers in Which the Examples are given
1.	Weak form of verb structure having a corresponding strong counterpart, and a transitive main verb.	It means that subject will get/has got/got the action represented by the main verb done on itself.	6.3
2.	Direct strong form of verb structure having a direct inanimate object to the principal verb, and a transitive main verb.	It means that subject will get/has got/got the action represented by the main verb done on the object.	6.4
3.	Direct strong form of verb structure having a direct animate object to the principal verb, and an intransitive/transitive main verb.	It means that subject will make/has made/made the object perform the action represented by the main verb.	6.5
4.	Indirect strong form of verb structure having an indirect inanimate object to the principal verb, and a transitive main verb.	It means that subject will allow/has allowed/allowed the action represented by the main verb to take place on the object.	6.6
5.	Indirect strong form of verb structure having an indirect animate object to the principal	It means that subject will allow/has allowed/allowed the object to carry out the action represented by the	6.7

	verb, and an intransitive/transitive main verb.	main verb.	
--	---	------------	--

Table 6.2

In the table 6.3 shown below, we have given examples of weak forms of verb structures of transitive verb ଗଞ୍ଜ with animate subject for two cases: (i) with the verb qualifier ଯିବି/ଓଇବି in them, and (ii) without the verb qualifier ଯିବି/ଓଇବି in them. It is to be noted that the semantics of weak forms of verb structures of transitive verbs depends on the meaning associated with the verbs, and these meanings are explained in tables 4.9 and 4.10. In case of transitive verb ଗଞ୍ଜ, this meaning is pseudo-transitive/reflexive. In the table 6.3, we have explained the semantics of verb structures for ten tenses only. The semantics for the remaining tenses are similar to these semantics, and may be obtained by combining the semantics of these verb structures with the semantics of the tenses as appropriate. Hence, in the rest of this section, we shall explain the semantics of the ten tenses in table 6.3 for various verb structures that follow.

	Tense of the Forms	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଗଞ୍ଜ having the verb qualifier ଯିବି/ଓଇବି in them	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଗଞ୍ଜ without the verb qualifier ଯିବି/ଓଇବି in them
1.	Present/future indefinite tense (ଏବିବିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି-ହୁଅଇବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି)	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଓଇବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You will get yourself cut. Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You will get cut. Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି
2.	Future persistent indefinite tense (ସିବିବିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି-ହୁଅଇବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି)	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଓଇବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You will continue to get yourself cut (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You will continue to get cut (until you realize about it). Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି
3.	Present continuous tense (ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି)	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଓଇବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You are getting yourself cut. Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You are getting cut. Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି
4.	Present persistent continuous tense (ସିବିବିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି)	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଓଇବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You are continuing to get yourself cut (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You are continuing to get cut (until you realize about it). Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି
5.	Present perfect tense (ଏବିବିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି)	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଓଇବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You have got yourself cut. Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି ଓଇବି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି	ଯିଉଠି ଗଞ୍ଜି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି ଗଞ୍ଜିବି [ଗଞ୍ଜି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି+ଗଞ୍ଜିବି] । You have got cut. Principal verb: ଗଞ୍ଜି Auxiliary verb: ଗଞ୍ଜିବି

Table 6.3

	Tense of the Forms	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb උදා having the verb qualifier එළඹ/ගමගන් in them	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb උදා with inanimate object , and having the verb qualifier එළඹ/ගමගන් in them
1.	Present/future indefinite (අනිශ්චිත කාලයකට හෝ අනාගතයකට)	ඔබට දෙන ගමගන් නි [දෙන+ගමගන්+නි] । You will get yourself cut. Principal verb: දෙන ගමගන් Auxiliary verb: නි	ඔබ ගමගන් [ගමගන්+නි] ඔබ ගමගන් [ඔබ+ගමගන්+නි] । You will get the paddy cut. Principal verb: ඔබ ගමගන් Auxiliary verb:
2.	Future persistent	ඔබට දෙන ගමගන් තිබේ-නි	ඔබ ගමගන් ඔබ ගමගන් තිබේ-නි

	indefinite tense (ସଞ୍ଜେହେଁ ଲାଗେଇବି). ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	[ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You will continue to get yourself cut (till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି	[ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You will continue to get the paddy cut (until it is over). Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି
3.	Present continuous tense (କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You are getting yourself cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You are getting the paddy cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି
4.	Present persistent continuous tense (ସଞ୍ଜେହେଁ ଲାଗେଇବି). କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You are continuing to get yourself cut(till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You are continuing to get the paddy cut (until it is over). Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି
5.	Present perfect tense (କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You have got yourself cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You have got the paddy cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି
6.	Past indefinite tense (କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You got yourself cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You got the paddy cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି
7.	Past perfect tense (କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You had got yourself cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You had got the paddy cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି
8.	Present imperative tense (କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । Get yourself cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । Get the paddy cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି-କଟିବି
9.	Present persistent imperative tense (ସଞ୍ଜେହେଁ ଲାଗେଇବି). କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You continue to get yourself cut(till some desired objective is achieved). Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । You continue to get the paddy cut(till it is over). Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି Auxiliary verb: କଟିବି କଟିବି-କଟିବି
10.	Present informative tense (କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି)	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । First, you get yourself cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି	କଟିବି ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି କଟିବି [ଫୁଲଟିଏ କଟିବି+କଟିବି+କଟିବି] । First, you get the paddy cut. Principal verb: ଫୁଲ କଟିବି

		Auxiliary verb: නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි	Auxiliary verb: නිමිඳේනි
6.	Past indefinite tense (උපරිත වර්තමාන) උනිදි	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । You made him cut the paddy. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । You got the paddy cut. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ
7.	Past perfect tense (උපරිත වර්තමාන) උනිදි	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । You had made him cut the paddy. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । You had got the paddy cut. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ
8.	Present imperative tense (වර්තමාන උපරිත) උනිදි	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । Make him cut the paddy. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । Get the paddy cut. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ
9.	Present persistent imperative tense (වර්තමාන උපරිත) උනිදි	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । You continue to make him cut the paddy (till it is over). Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । You continue to get the paddy cut (till it is over). Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ
10.	Present informative tense (වර්තමාන උපරිත) උනිදි	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । First, you make him cut the paddy. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ	නිමිඳු ඉරිඳි කළේ නිමිඳු කළේ [නිමිඳු+කළේ+කළේ+නිමිඳු] । First, you get the paddy cut. Principal verb: නිමිඳු Auxiliary verb: කළේ

References

1. P. O. Bodding, “A Santal Dictioanry”, 7 parts in 5 volumes, Gyan Publishing House, New Delhi-110002, 2002.
2. P. O. Bodding, “Santali Grammar for Beginners”, The Santal Mission of the Northern Churches, Bengaria, 2nd Impression, 1944.
3. Raghunath Murmu, “Ronor: A Santali Grammar in Santali”, Adibasi Socio-Educational and Cultural Association, Orissa, Rairangpur, 7th Edition, 2000.
4. Dasharath Murmu, “Parsi Panja: A Book of Translation from Santali to English”, Adibasi Socio-Educational and Cultural Association, Jharkhand, Chakulia, 1st Edition, 1984.
5. Arun Ghosh, “Santali: A Look into Santal Morphology”, Gyan Publishing House, New Delhi-110002, 1994.
6. Doman Sahu ‘Samir’, “Hindi Aur Santali: Tulnatmak Adhyayana(A Comparative Study of Hindi and Santali Languages)”, Shri Atmaballabh Jain Smarak Shikshan Nidhi, Delhi-110036, 1998.
7. P. C. Wren and H. Martin, “High School English Grammar and Composition”, S. Chand and Company(Pvt.) Ltd., New Delhi-110055, 122nd Edition, 1988.

Appendix A: Tables of Suffixed Forms of Verbs**Appendix A1: Tables of Suffixed Forms of Weak Intransitive Verbs**

Some of these verbs can assume direct strong forms, but they are not used alone as main verb in these forms simply because they do not make proper sense as a main verb in these forms. However, they may be used as a part of a main verb in these forms, and hence, for the sake of completeness, the direct strong forms of some of the verbs in this table are also given.

Root/ Reciprocal Form of Verbs in Santali	Meaning of Verbs in English	Weak Present Form	Strong Present Continuous Form	Strong Past Continuous Form
ଧୂଉଞ୍ଜ	To sprout	ଧୂଉଞ୍ଜିତେ	-----	-----
ଠଉଞ୍ଚିତ	To vibrate	ଠଉଞ୍ଚିତେ	-----	-----
ଠଉଞ୍ଚି	To stay	ଠଉଞ୍ଚିତେ	-----	-----
ଠଉଞ୍ଚି	To become quiet	ଠଉଞ୍ଚିତେ	-----	-----
ଢେଉ	To die	ଢେଉତେ	-----	-----
ପଞ୍ଜିତେ	To get tired	ପଞ୍ଜିତେ	-----	-----
ଧିଉ	To sit (bird)	ଧିଉତେ	-----	-----
ଧିଉତେ	To yawn	ଧିଉତେ	-----	-----
ଧି.ଠି	To move along with the stream	ଧି.ଠିତେ	-----	-----
ଘଣ୍ଟିତ	To kneel down	ଘଣ୍ଟିତେ	-----	-----
ଘଣ୍ଟିତ	To set (sun)	ଘଣ୍ଟିତେ	-----	-----
ଘଣ୍ଟି	To happen	ଘଣ୍ଟିତେ	ଘଣ୍ଟିତେ	ଘଣ୍ଟିତେ
ଘଣ୍ଟି	To come	ଘଣ୍ଟିତେ	-----	-----
ଝି	To become rotten	ଝିତେ	-----	-----
ଝି	To go	ଝିତେ	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି	To flee away	ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To become angry	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To comply with	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To get fever	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To go	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To walk (children)	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To feel drowsy	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To sit	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To swim	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To enter	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To become drunk	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----
ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	To lie down (animal)	ଞ୍ଜି.ଞ୍ଜି	-----	-----

Appendix A2: Tables of Suffixed Forms of Strong Intransitive Verbs

These verbs are mostly used in strong form of verb structures as intransitive verb. However, a few of these verbs may be used in some of the tenses of weak form of verb structures as intransitive verbs in which the involvement of the subject in performing the action is much less compared to that in the corresponding strong form.

Root/ Reciprocal Form of Verbs in Santali	Meaning of Verbs in English	Weak Present Form	Strong Present Continuous Form	Strong Past Continuous Form
ଠଉଝଉ	To walk	-----	ଠଉଝଉଓଢ଼େ	ଠଉଝଉଓଢ଼େ
ଠଝଝଝ	To light with moonlight	ଠଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଠଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଠଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଠଝଝଝ	To clap	-----	ଠଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଠଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଠଝ	To spit	-----	ଠଝଓଢ଼େ	ଠଝଓଢ଼େ
ଢ଼େ	To draw a line	-----	ଢ଼େଓଢ଼େ	ଢ଼େଓଢ଼େ
ଢ଼େଢ଼େ	To laugh	-----	ଢ଼େଢ଼େଓଢ଼େ	ଢ଼େଢ଼େଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝ	To have poor rain	-----	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝ.ଝଝଝ	To sneeze	-----	ଝ.ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝ.ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝ	To cough	ଝଝଝ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝ	To salute	-----	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝ.ଝଝ	To sleep	-----	ଝଝ.ଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝ.ଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝ.ଝଝ	To rain incessantly	-----	ଝଝ.ଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝ.ଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝ	To breathe	-----	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝ	To have good rain	-----	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝ	To become sunny(weather)	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝ	To flow air	-----	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝ	To thunder	-----	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝ	To cry	-----	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝ.ଝଝଝ.	To rejoice	ଝଝ.ଝଝଝ.ଝଝ	ଝଝ.ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝ.ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝଝ	To open mouth	-----	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝ	To jump	-----	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝ	To rain	-----	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝ.ଝ	To run	-----	ଝଝ.ଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝ.ଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝଝ	To become clear (weather)	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝଝ	To kick	-----	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝ	To drink milk from the breast	ଝଝଝଝ	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ
ଝଝଝଝଝ	To be awake	-----	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ	ଝଝଝଝଝଓଢ଼େ

Appendix A3: Tables of Suffixed Forms of Strong Transitive Verbs

Some of these verbs may be used both as a transitive verb as well as an intransitive verb in direct strong form. This feature is also present in other languages as well including English. When these verbs are used in weak present form(if possible), they may have one or more of the following semantics, viz., reflexive, intransitive, pseudo-transitive, transitive with active voice semantics, and transitive with passive voice semantics, depending on the subject, and the meaning of the verb.

Root/ Reciprocal Form of Verbs in Santali	Meaning of Verbs in English	Weak Present Form	Strong Present Continuous Form	Strong Past Continuous Form
ଧଢେ	To blow smoke into a hole	ଧଢେଢେ	ଧଢେଢେ	ଧଢେଢେ
ଧଢେ	To blow air	ଧଢେଧଢେ	ଧଢେଢେ	ଧଢେଢେ
ଧପ	To write	ଧପଧଢେ, ଧପଧଢେଧଢେ	ଧପଢେ	ଧପଢେ
ଧନ୍	To pull	ଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧନ୍ଧଢେ
ଧଢଢେ	To remove	ଧଢଢେଧଢେ	ଧଢଢେଢେ	ଧଢଢେଢେ
ଠଧପ	To tie	ଠଧପଧଢେ	ଠଧପଢେ	ଠଧପଢେ
ଠଧଢଢେ	To bury	ଠଧଢଢେଧଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେଢେ
ଠଧଢଢେ	To tear a rope	ଠଧଢଢେଧଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେଢେ
ଠଧପ	To lift	ଠଧପଧଢେ	ଠଧପଢେ	ଠଧପଢେ
ଠଧଢ	To shoot	ଠଧଢଧଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେ
ଠଧଢ	To take off	ଠଧଢଧଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେ	ଠଧଢଢେ
ଠଢଢ	To knit (a cot)	ଠଢଢଧଢେ	ଠଢଢଢେ	ଠଢଢଢେ
ଢେଧ	To die or to kill	ଢେଧଧଢେ	-----	ଢେଧଢେ
ଢେ.ଢଧନ୍	To scratch	ଢେ.ଢଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଢେ.ଢଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଢେ.ଢଧନ୍ଧଢେ
ଢେଢଢ	To throw as useless	ଢେଢଢଢେ	ଢେଢଢଢେ	ଢେଢଢଢେ
ଢେଢ	To cut	ଢେଢଧଢେ	ଢେଢଢେ	ଢେଢଢେ
ପଧ	To burn	ପଧଢେ	ପଧଢେ	ପଧଢେ
ପଧପଧ	To heat	ପଧପଧଢେ	ପଧପଧଢେ	ପଧପଧଢେ
ପଧ.ଢେ	To tell	ପଧ.ଢେଧଢେ	ପଧ.ଢେଢେ	ପଧ.ଢେଢେ
ଧଠଧନ୍	To burn	ଧଠଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧଠଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧଠଧନ୍ଧଢେ
ଧ.ଠଧନ୍	To take away	-----	ଧ.ଠଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧ.ଠଧନ୍ଧଢେ
ଧଢ	To lose	ଧଢଧଢେ	ଧଢଢେ	ଧଢଢେ
ଧଢଢେ	To bring down, to come down	ଧଢଢେଧଢେ	ଧଢଢେଢେ	ଧଢଢେଢେ
ଧ'ଧଧଢ	To listen	ଧ'ଧଧଢଧଢେ	ଧ'ଧଧଢଢେ	ଧ'ଧଧଢଢେ
ଧ.ଢେ	To bring	ଧ.ଢେଧଢେ	ଧ.ଢେଢେ	ଧ.ଢେଢେ
ଧ.ଧଧନ୍	To sell	ଧ.ଧଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧ.ଧଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧ.ଧଧନ୍ଧଢେ
ଧ.ଧଧଢ	To wash	ଧ.ଧଧଢଧଢେ	ଧ.ଧଧଢଢେ	ଧ.ଧଧଢଢେ
ଧ.ଧଧନ୍	To rotate	ଧ.ଧଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧ.ଧଧନ୍ଧଢେ	ଧ.ଧଧନ୍ଧଢେ
ଧନ୍ଧଢ	To buy	ଧନ୍ଧଢଧଢେ	ଧନ୍ଧଢଢେ	ଧନ୍ଧଢଢେ
ଧଧଢ	To ask	-----	ଧଧଢଢେ	ଧଧଢଢେ
ଧଧଢ.ଧ	To chase	-----	ଧଧଢ.ଧଢେ	ଧଧଢ.ଧଢେ
ଧଧଢ	To eat	ଧଧଢଧଢେ,	ଧଧଢଢେ	ଧଧଢଢେ

		ୱୱୱୱୱୱ		
ୱୱୱୱ	To touch	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱ	To smell	ୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ	To cook	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱ	To cut crops or grass	ୱୱୱୱ, ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱ	To take	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ	To put off	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ	To move aside	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱ	To sing	-----	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	To take	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱ	To think	-----	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱ	To get, To look for	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱ	To see	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱ	To drink	-----	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱ	To give a name	-----	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱ	To plant (a tree)	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	To lift, to climb	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱ	To beat a drum	-----	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱ	To take bath	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ.ୱ	To remember	ୱୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ
ୱୱ	To swallow	-----	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ	To show	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱ	To throw	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ	To do, to happen	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱ	To learn	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ	To beat	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱ.ୱୱୱ	To throw (a stone)	ୱୱ.ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱ.ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱ.ୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱ	To pour	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱ	To scold	-----	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱ	To give	ୱୱୱୱ, ୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱ	To cross	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱୱୱ	To pray	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱୱୱୱୱ
ୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ.	To decide	ୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ.ୱ	ୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ	ୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ.ୱୱୱ

Appendix A4: Tables of Suffixed Forms of Transitive Verbs with Indirect Objects

These verbs belong either to the category of strong intransitive verbs or to the category of strong transitive verbs, but they can be used as transitive verbs with indirect objects. If the strong present form for a verb is not present below, it only means that the verb cannot be used properly with indirect inanimate object, and it is normally used with a indirect animate object, and a direct inanimate object.

Root/Reciprocal Form of Verbs in Santali	Meaning of Verbs in English	Strong Present Form	Strong Past Form
ᱟᱵᱟ	To press	ᱟᱵᱟᱠᱟᱢ	ᱟᱵᱟᱠᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢ	To write	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢ	To blow air	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢ	To pull	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟ	To tie	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟ	To lift	-----	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟ	To shoot	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟ	To knit (a cot)	-----	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟ	To spit	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟ	To kill	-----	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To scratch	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟ	To cut	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢ	To burn	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To heat	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To laugh	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To tell	-----	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To burn	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To bring down	-----	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To bring	-----	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To like	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To hammer	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To touch	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To smell	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To rejoice	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To jump	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To beat	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To rain	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To cut into small pieces	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To make space empty	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To kick	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ
ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	To pray	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ	ᱟᱢᱟᱢ

Names of Terms in English	Names of Equivalent Terms in Santali
Action	bṭi.ʌŋ
Action-centric form of verb	bṭiḍḍṭi ṣṛṇṇṇṇ bṭi.ʌŋ-ḥṭiʌṭiṇṇ ṣḅṭ
Adjective	ṭḅḅḅḅ
Adverb	oṭiḍḍṭi
Affirmative sentence	ʌṛṇ-ʌṛḍḍo ŋi.ṇṇi.o
Aka form of verb structure	bṭiḍḍṭi Ṇṭṭṭiṭ ṣṛṇṇṇṇ ṭibṭi ṣḅṭ
Animate object	ʌŋʌŋṇṇṇ Ṇṭṭṭiḥ
Assertive sentence	ʌṛḍḍo ŋi.ṇṇi.o
Attribute	ṭḅḅḅ
Auxiliary verb	ṭeṭṇṇṇṇ bṭiḍḍṭi
Base component of verb structure	bṭiḍḍṭi Ṇṭṭṭiṭ ṣṛṇṇṇṇ ṭiṣṛṭṭṭi o ʌṭi.ŋŋŋ
Base form of verb	bṭiḍḍṭi ṣṛṇṇṇṇ ṭiṣṛṭṭṭi ṣḅṭ
Basic form of verb structure	bṭiḍḍṭi Ṇṭṭṭiṭ ṣṛṇṇṇṇ ṭḅṭ ṣḅṭ
Bound emphasizer	oṭṭ ṭiṆṭi
Cause	bṭiṣṭḅḅ
Causal	bṭiṣṭḅḅŋ
Clause	bḅṭi:ṭŋi ŋi.ṇṇi.o
Common gender	ʌṭi.o Ṇṭṭṭiṇṇṇ
Comparison	oḅṭṭḅḅṭi
Complex sentence	bṭiṭṭ ŋi.ṇṇi.o
Component	ʌṭi.ŋŋŋ
Compound main verb	oṭṇṇṇ ṭḅṭ bṭiḍḍṭi
Compound sentence	oṭṇṇṇ ŋi.ṇṇi.o
Condition	ḥṭiṣṭṭi
Conditional	ḥṭiṣṭṭi-ʌṛḍḍṇṇ
Conjunction	oṭiḍḍṇṇ
Contrast	oṭṭiṣṭi o
Direct animate object	ʌŋʌŋṇṇṇ ḥṭiṭṇṇṇ Ṇṭṭṭiḥ
Direct inanimate object	ṇŋḅ-ʌŋʌŋṇṇṇ ḥṭiṭṇṇṇ Ṇṭṭṭiḥ
Direct object	ḥṭiṭṇṇṇ Ṇṭṭṭiḥ
Direct strong form	ḥṭiṭṇṇṇ ṭṭṭṭṭi ṣḅṭ
Dual Number	ṇṭiṣ ṭeṭṇṇṇṇ
Emphasizer	ṭiṆṭi
Emphasizing infix	ṭiṆṭiṇṇṇ oṭṭṭiṭ-ṭṭiṇṇṇṇ
Existential infix	ʌṛḍḍṇṇ oṭṭṭiṭ-ṭṭiṇṇṇṇ
Feminine Gender	bḅṭŋ Ṇṭṭṭiṇṇṇ
First person	ṭṭiṇṇṇṇ ṭeṭiṣṭḅḅ
Free emphasizer	ṇŋḅ-oṭṭ ṭiṆṭi
Form	ṣḅṭ
Fully truncated simple sentence	ṭḅṭṭi. ṇḅḅṇṇṇṇ ṭi.ṇṇi.o
Future continuous tense	ṭṭṭṭi ṭṭṭṭiṇṇ ḍṭiṇṇṇ
Future indefinite tense	ḥṭiṭṭi ṭṭṭṭiṇṇ ḍṭiṇṇṇ
Future perfect tense	ḥṭi.oṬḅḅ ṭṭṭṭiṇṇ ḍṭiṇṇṇ
Future persistent indefinite tense	ṣṭṭṭṭṭiṇṇ. ḥṭiṭṭi ṭṭṭṭiṇṇ ḍṭiṇṇṇ
Future tense	ṭṭṭṭiṇṇ ḍṭiṇṇṇ

[illegible]

Weak form of verb structure	ବନ୍ଧିପୁଅ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ସଞ୍ଜେ ପଢ଼ନ୍ତି. ସନ୍ଧ୍ୟା
Weak present form	ପଢ଼ନ୍ତି. ପଢ଼ନ୍ତି. ସନ୍ଧ୍ୟା
Weak intransitive verb	ପଢ଼ି-ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପଢ଼ନ୍ତି. ବନ୍ଧିପୁଅ
Weak verb	ପଢ଼ନ୍ତି. ବନ୍ଧିପୁଅ
Whole verb	ପଢ଼ନ୍ତି. ବନ୍ଧିପୁଅ
With object	ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ
Without object	ପଢ଼ି-ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ
Word	ପଢ଼ି.

Appendix C: Tables of Forms of Verb Structures

In all the tables except C1, two forms of verb structures are given for each tense with the exception of future continuous tense. In the first form, the word preceding the verb is emphasized, and in the second form, the verb itself is emphasized. Future continuous tense is in aka-form which requires subject infix, and therefore, only one form is possible. But, for the sake of uniformity, the same form is shown in both the columns. In table C1, the verb structure is in weak form with inanimate subject. Hence, there is no bound emphaser corresponding to the subject, and only one form is possible.

Appendix C1: Weak forms of verb structures of intransitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱪᱟᱹᱨᱟᱹ as the inanimate subject.

Appendix C2: Weak forms of verb structures of intransitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject.

Appendix C3: Weak forms of verb structures of intransitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject.

Appendix C13: Direct strong forms of verb structures of intransitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the inanimate subject.

Appendix C24: Direct strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject and ᱫᱟᱹ as the direct inanimate object.

Appendix C25: Direct strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject and ᱫᱟᱹ as the direct animate object.

Appendix C34: Direct strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject and ᱫᱟᱹ as the direct animate object.

Appendix C36: Indirect strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject and ᱫᱟᱹ as the indirect inanimate object.

Appendix C37: Indirect strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject and ᱫᱟᱹ as the indirect animate object.

Appendix C47: Indirect strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ᱫᱟᱹ with ᱫᱟᱹ as the animate subject and ᱫᱟᱹ as the indirect animate object.

	Tense of the Forms	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb අඩු with උනිහිනා as the Inanimate Subject
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩුවේ නි । A leaf will fall.
2.	Future indefinite tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩුවේ නි එයිනිමි । A leaf will fall.
3.	Future persistent indefinite tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු බවින් නි । A leaf will continue to fall(till it rests on some surface).
4.	Future continuous tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු වෙතිනි මතර්නිමි । A leaf will be falling.
5.	Future perfect tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු බවින් එයිනිමි । A leaf will have fallen.
6.	Present continuous tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩුවේ වෙනිමි । A leaf is falling.
7.	Present persistent continuous tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු බවින් වෙනිමි මතර්නිමි । A leaf is continuing to fall(till it rests on some surface).
8.	Present perfect tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු වෙතිනිමි । A leaf has fallen
9.	Present imperative tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩුවේ යනි । I wish that a leaf should fall.
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු බවින් යනි යනි යනි । I wish that a leaf should continue to fall(till it rests on some surface).
11.	Present informative tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු වෙතිනි මතර්නිමි । Let a leaf fall.
12.	Past indefinite tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු වෙතිනි । A leaf fell.
13.	Past continuous tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩුවේ වෙනිමි මතර්නිමි । A leaf was falling.
14.	Past persistent continuous tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු බවින් වෙනිමි මතර්නිමි । A leaf was continuing to fall(till it rested on some surface).
15.	Past perfect tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු වෙතිනි මතර්නිමි । A leaf had fallen(before another implied event).
16.	Past repetitive tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩුවේ මතර්නිමි । A leaf used to fall.
17.	Past persistent repetitive tense	යැවෙන්නා උනිහිනා අඩු බවින් මතර්නිමි । A leaf used to fall(till it rested on some surface).

Appendix C2: Weak forms of verb structures of intransitive verb ୱଝେ with ଶ଼ as the animate subject.

	Tense of the Forms	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ୱଝେ with ଶ଼ as the Subject and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ୱଝେ	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ୱଝେ with ଶ଼ as the Subject and Emphasis on the Verb ୱଝେ
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଥି । I shall go.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଥି.କା । I shall go.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଥି ଉଠାଉଁଝେ । I shall go.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଥି.କା ଉଠାଉଁଝେ । I shall go.
3.	Future persistent indefinite tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ-ଥି । I shall continue to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଥି.କା । I shall continue to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
4.	Future continuous tense	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ଥିବ଼.କା ଠିକାଠିକାଠି । I shall be going.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ଥିବ଼.କା ଠିକାଠିକାଠି । I shall be going.
5.	Future perfect tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ-ଥି ଉଠାଉଁଝେ । I shall have gone.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଥି.କା ଉଠାଉଁଝେ । I shall have gone.
6.	Present continuous tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ-ଥି । I am going.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ.ଥି.କା । I am going.
7.	Present persistent continuous tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ-ଥି । I am continuing to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ.ଥି.କା । I am continuing to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
8.	Present perfect tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ଥିବ଼.ଥି । I have gone.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ଥିବ଼.ଥି.କା । I have gone.
9.	Present imperative tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଯି । I order/advise myself to go.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଯି.କା । I order/advise myself to go.
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଯି । I order/advise myself to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଯି.କା । I order/advise myself to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
11.	Present informative tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ପଝେ ଗଝେ । Let me go.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ପଝେ ଗଝେ.କା । Let me go.
12.	Past indefinite tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ଝଝେ । I went.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ଝଝେ.କା । I went.
13.	Past continuous tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି । I was going.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି ଶ଼ । I was going.
14.	Past persistent continuous tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି । I was continuing to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି ଶ଼ । I was continuing to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
15.	Past perfect tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ପଝେ-ଥି । I had gone(before another implied event).	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ପଝେ.ଥି.କା । I had gone(before another implied event).
16.	Past repetitive tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି । I used to go.	ଶ଼ ୱଝେଉଁଝେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି ଶ଼ । I used to go.
17.	Past persistent repetitive tense	ଶ଼-କାଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି । I used to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଶ଼ ୱଝେ ବଞ୍ଚେ ଠିକାଠିକାଠି ଶ଼ । I used to go(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).

Appendix C3: Weak forms of verb structures of intransitive verb ଘଟିଲି with ଉପକ୍ରମ as the animate subject.

	Tense of the Forms	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ଘଟିଲି with ଉପକ୍ରମ as the Subject and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ଘଟିଲି	Weak Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ଘଟିଲି with ଉପକ୍ରମ as the Subject and Emphasis on the Verb ଘଟିଲି
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ । Both of us shall come.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us shall come.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ କେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us shall come.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us shall come.
3.	Future persistent indefinite tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ । Both of us shall continue to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ମନେ । Both of us shall continue to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
4.	Future continuous tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ । Both of us shall be coming.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ । Both of us shall be coming.
5.	Future perfect tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us shall have come.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ମନେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us shall have come.
6.	Present continuous tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ବଢ଼ିବେ । Both of us are coming.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ବଢ଼ିବେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us are coming.
7.	Present persistent continuous tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ବଢ଼ିବେ । Both of us are continuing to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ବଢ଼ିବେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us are continuing to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
8.	Present perfect tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us have come.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us have come.
9.	Present imperative tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ଘଟି । Both of us order/advise ourselves to come.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ଘଟି ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us order/advise ourselves to come.
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟି । Both of us order/advise ourselves to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟି ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us order/advise ourselves to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
11.	Present informative tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ ଘଟି । Let both of us come.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ ଘଟି ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Let both of us come.
12.	Past indefinite tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ଘଟି । Both of us came.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ଘଟି ଉପକ୍ରମେ । Both of us came.
13.	Past continuous tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟିଲି । Both of us were coming.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ । Both of us were coming.
14.	Past persistent continuous tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟିଲି । Both of us were continuing to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ । Both of us were continuing to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
15.	Past perfect tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ ଘଟି । Both of us had come(before another implied event).	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ ଘଟି । Both of us had come(before another implied event).
16.	Past repetitive tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ଘଟିଲି । Both of us used to come.	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲିକେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ । Both of us used to come.
17.	Past persistent repetitive tense	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ମନେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟିଲି । Both of us used to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଉପକ୍ରମେ ଘଟିଲି ବଢ଼ିବେ ଘଟିଲି ମନେ । Both of us used to come(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).

Appendix C13: Direct strong forms of verb structures of intransitive verb ଓଡ଼ିଆ with ଗୋଡ଼ as the inanimate subject.

	Tense of the Forms	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ଓଡ଼ିଆ with ଗୋଡ଼ as the Subject and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ଓଡ଼ିଆ	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Intransitive Verb ଓଡ଼ିଆ with ଥିଲା as the Subject and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ଓଡ଼ିଆ
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle will move.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He will run.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle will move.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He will run.
3.	Future persistent indefinite tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle will continue to move(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He will continue to run(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
4.	Future continuous tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle will be moving.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He will be running.
5.	Future perfect tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle would have moved.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He would have run.
6.	Present continuous tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle is moving.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He is running.
7.	Present persistent continuous tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle is continuing to move(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He is continuing to run(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
8.	Present perfect tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle has moved.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He has run.
9.	Present imperative tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । Let the vehicle move.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । Let him run.
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । Let the vehicle move(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । Let him run(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
11.	Present informative tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ପଞ୍ଚେ । First, let the vehicle move.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ପଞ୍ଚେ । First, let him run.
12.	Past indefinite tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle moved.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He ran.
13.	Past continuous tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle was moving.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He was running.
14.	Past persistent continuous tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle was continuing to move(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He was continuing to run(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).
15.	Past perfect tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle had moved.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He had ran.
16.	Past repetitive tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle used to move.	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He used to run.
17.	Past persistent repetitive tense	ଗୋଡ଼ ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । The vehicle used to move(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).	ଥିଲା ଓଡ଼ିଆ ଗଲେ । He used to run(with a view to reach the destination, and remain there).

Appendix C24: Direct strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb **ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ**, with **ବଢିବ** as the animate subject and **ଘର** as the direct inanimate object.

	Tense of the Forms	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, with ବଢିବ as the Animate Subject, ଘର as the Direct Inanimate Object and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ.	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, with ବଢିବ as the Animate Subject, ଘର as the Direct Inanimate Object and Emphasis on the Verb ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ.
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They will clean the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They will clean the house.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର ଘର । They will clean the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର ଘର । They will clean the house.
3.	Future persistent indefinite tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They will continue to clean the house(till it becomes clean)	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They will continue to clean the house(till it becomes clean).
4.	Future continuous tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର ଘର । ଘର । They will be cleaning the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର ଘର । ଘର । They will be cleaning the house.
5.	Future perfect tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They will have cleaned the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They will have cleaned the house.
6.	Present continuous tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They are cleaning the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They are cleaning the house.
7.	Present persistent continuous tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They are continuing to clean the house(till it becomes clean).	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They are continuing to clean the house(till it becomes clean).
8.	Present perfect tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They have cleaned the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They have cleaned the house.
9.	Present imperative tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । Let them clean the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । Let them clean the house.
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । Let them continue to clean the house(till it becomes clean).	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । Let them continue to clean the house(till it becomes clean).
11.	Present informative tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ପଠ ଘର । First, let them clean the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ପଠ ଘର । First, let them clean the house.
12.	Past indefinite tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They cleaned the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They cleaned the house.
13.	Past persistent indefinite tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They continued to clean the house(till it became clean).	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They continued to clean the house(till it became clean).
14.	Past continuous tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They were cleaning the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They were cleaning the house.
15.	Past persistent continuous tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They were continuing to clean the house(so that it becomes clean).	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They were continuing to clean the house(so that it becomes clean).
16.	Past perfect tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They had cleaned the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । They had cleaned the house.
17.	Past repetitive tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They used to clean the house.	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They used to clean the house.
18.	Past persistent repetitive tense	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They used to clean the house(until it was fully clean).	ବଢିବ ଘର ମାନ୍ଦିଲେ, ଘର । ଘର । They used to clean the house(until it was fully clean).

Appendix C25: Direct strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb **𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫** with **𑒧𑒱** as the animate subject and **𑒧𑒱** as the direct animate object.

	Tense of the Forms	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 with 𑒧𑒱 as the Animate Subject, 𑒧𑒱 as the Direct Animate Object and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 with 𑒧𑒱 as the Animate Subject, 𑒧𑒱 as the Direct Animate Object and Emphasis on the Verb 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will touch me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will touch me.
2.	Future indefinite tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will touch me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will touch me.
3.	Future persistent indefinite tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will continue to touch me(till some desired objective is achieved).	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will continue to touch me(till some desired objective is achieved).
4.	Future continuous tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will be touching me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will be touching me.
5.	Future perfect tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will have touched me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He will have touched me.
6.	Present continuous tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He is touching me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He is touching me.
7.	Present persistent continuous tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He is continuing to touch me(till some desired objective is achieved).	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He is continuing to touch me(till some desired objective is achieved).
8.	Present perfect tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He has touched me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He has touched me.
9.	Present imperative tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । Let him touch me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । Let him touch me.
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । Let him continue to touch me(till some desired objective is achieved).	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । Let him continue to touch me(till some desired objective is achieved).
11.	Present informative tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । First, let him touch me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । First, let him touch me.
12.	Past indefinite tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He touched me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He touched me.
13.	Past persistent indefinite tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He touched me(till he was satisfied).	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He touched me(till he was satisfied).
14.	Past continuous tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He was touching me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He was touching me.
15.	Past persistent continuous tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He was continuing to touch me(till some desired objective was achieved).	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He was continuing to touch me(till some desired objective was achieved).
16.	Past perfect tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He had touched me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He had touched me.
17.	Past repetitive tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He used to touch me.	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He used to touch me.
18.	Past persistent repetitive tense	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He used to touch me(till some desired objective was achieved).	𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 𑒧𑒱𑒪𑒫 । He used to touch me(till some desired objective was achieved).

Appendix C34: Direct strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb **ଅ.ସବୁ** with **ଅ.ଉ** as the animate subject and **ଅ.ବଗେ** as the direct animate object.

	Tense of the Forms	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଅ.ସବୁ with ଅ.ଉ as the Animate Subject, ଅ.ବଗେ as the Direct Animate Object and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ଅ.ସବୁ	Direct Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଅ.ସବୁ with ଅ.ଉ as the Animate Subject, ଅ.ବଗେ as the Direct Animate Object and Emphasis on the Verb ଅ.ସବୁ
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଅ. । We shall wash them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଅ. । We shall wash them.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଅ. ଡେଅ. । We shall wash them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଅ. ଡେଅ. । We shall wash them.
3.	Future persistent indefinite tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଅ. । We shall continue to wash them(till they are presumably clean).	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଅ. । We shall continue to wash them(till they are presumably clean).
4.	Future continuous tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ଅ.ବ. ଉ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. । We shall be washing them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ଅ.ବ. ଉ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. । We shall be washing them.
5.	Future perfect tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଅ. ଡେଅ. । We shall have washed them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଅ. ଡେଅ. । We shall have washed them.
6.	Present continuous tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ଓ.ବଗେ ଅ. । We are washing them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ଓ.ବଗେ ଅ. । We are washing them.
7.	Present persistent continuous tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ବ.ଅ. । We are continuing to wash them(till they are presumably clean).	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ବ.ଅ. ଉ । We are continuing to wash them(till they are presumably clean).
8.	Present perfect tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ଅ.ବ. ଓ.ବଗେ ଅ. । We have washed them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ଅ.ବ. ଓ.ବଗେ ଅ. । We have washed them.
9.	Present imperative tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଲ. । Let us wash them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଲ. ଉ । Let us wash them.
10.	Present persistent imperative tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଲ. । Let us continue to wash them(till they are presumably clean).	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଲ. ଉ । Let us continue to wash them(till they are presumably clean).
11.	Present informative tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ପ.ବଗେ ଓ. । First, let us wash them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ପ.ବଗେ ଓ. ଉ । First, let us wash them.
12.	Past indefinite tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ଗେ ଅ. । We washed them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ଗେ ଅ. । We washed them.
13.	Past persistent indefinite tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ଗେ ଅ. । We washed them(till they were presumably clean).	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ଗେ ଅ. । We washed them(till they were presumably clean).
14.	Past continuous tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ଓ.ବଗେ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. । We were washing them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ଓ.ବଗେ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. ଉ । We were washing them.
15.	Past persistent continuous tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ବ.ଅ. ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. । We were continuing to wash them(till they were presumably clean).	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ବ.ଅ. ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. ଉ । We were continuing to wash them(till they were presumably clean).
16.	Past perfect tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ପ.ଗେ ଅ. । We had washed them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ପ.ଗେ ଅ. । We had washed them.
17.	Past repetitive tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. । We used to wash them.	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବଗେ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. ଉ । We used to wash them.
18.	Past persistent repetitive tense	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଉ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. । We used to wash them(till they were presumably clean).	ଅ.ଉ ଅ.ବଗେ ଅ.ସବୁ ବ.ବଗେ ଓ.ଉଅ.ଅ. ଉ । We used to wash them(till they were presumably clean).

Appendix C36: Indirect strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb **ବିଲଟ** with **ଆମ** as the animate subject and **ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ** as the indirect inanimate object.

	Tense of the Forms	Indirect Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ବିଲଟ with ଆମ as the Animate Subject, ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ as the Indirect Inanimate Object and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ବିଲଟ	Indirect Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ବିଲଟ with ଆମ as the Animate Subject, ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ as the Indirect Inanimate Object and Emphasis on the Verb ବିଲଟ
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ । We like his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ ପରା । We like his funny action.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ ଲେଲେ । We shall like his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ ଲେଲେ । We shall like his funny action.
3.	Future continuous tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ ପରା ଲେଲେଲେ । We shall be liking his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ ଲେଲେଲେ । We shall be liking his funny action.
4.	Present continuous tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେ । We are liking his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେ ଆମ ପରା । We are liking his funny action.
5.	Present perfect tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ । We have liked his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ ଆମ ପରା । We have liked his funny action.
6.	Present imperative tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେ । Let us like his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେ ଆମ ପରା । Let us like his funny action.
7.	Past indefinite tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ । We liked his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଆମ ପରା । We liked his funny action.
8.	Past continuous tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ । We were liking his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ ଆମ ପରା । We were liking his funny action.
9.	Past perfect tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ । We had liked his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେ ଆମ ପରା । We had liked his funny action.
10.	Past repetitive tense	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ପରା ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେଲେ । We used to like his funny action.	ଆମର ହେଲେଲେ ଲକ୍ଷ୍ମଣ ବିଲଟେଲେ ଲେଲେଲେଲେ ଆମ ପରା । We used to like his funny action.

Appendix C37: Indirect strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb ପଞ୍ଜି with ଥୁ as the animate subject and ଶୁ as the indirect animate object.

	Tense of the Forms	Indirect Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ପଞ୍ଜି with ଥୁ as the Animate Subject, ଶୁ as the Indirect Animate Object and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ପଞ୍ଜି	Indirect Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ପଞ୍ଜି with ଥୁ as the Animate Subject, ଶୁ as the Indirect Animate Object and Emphasis on the Verb ପଞ୍ଜି
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ । You will tell me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ । You will tell me.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You will tell me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You will tell me.
3.	Future continuous tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You will be telling me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You will be telling me.
4.	Present continuous tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You are telling me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You are telling me.
5.	Present perfect tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You have told me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You have told me.
6.	Present imperative tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You tell me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You tell me.
7.	Past indefinite tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You told me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You told me.
8.	Past continuous tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You were telling me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You were telling me.
9.	Past perfect tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You had told me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You had told me.
10.	Past repetitive tense	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You used to tell me.	ଥୁ ଶୁ ପଞ୍ଜି ପଞ୍ଜି ଥୁ.ଗୁ ଉକ୍ତେ । You used to tell me.

Appendix C47: Indirect strong forms of verb structures of transitive verb **ଘରଘର** with **ମନ** as the animate subject and **କର** as the indirect animate object.

	Tense of the Forms	Indirect Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଘରଘର with ମନ as the Animate Subject, କର as the Indirect Animate Object and Emphasis on the Word Preceding the Verb ଘରଘର	Indirect Strong Forms of Verb Structures of Transitive Verb ଘରଘର with ମନ as the Animate Subject, କର as the Indirect Animate Object and Emphasis on the Verb ଘରଘର
1.	Present/future indefinite tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I shall call them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I shall call them.
2.	Future indefinite tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I shall call them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I shall call them.
3.	Future continuous tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I shall be calling them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I shall be calling them.
4.	Present continuous tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I am calling them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I am calling them.
5.	Present perfect tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I have called them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I have called them.
6.	Present imperative tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । Let me call them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । Let me call them.
7.	Past indefinite tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I called them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I called them.
8.	Past continuous tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I was calling them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I was calling them.
9.	Past perfect tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I had called them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I had called them.
10.	Past repetitive tense	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I used to call them.	ମନ କରଘରଘର ଘରଘର କର । I used to call them.